C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Basic Course

Volume VIII

Lessons 1-26

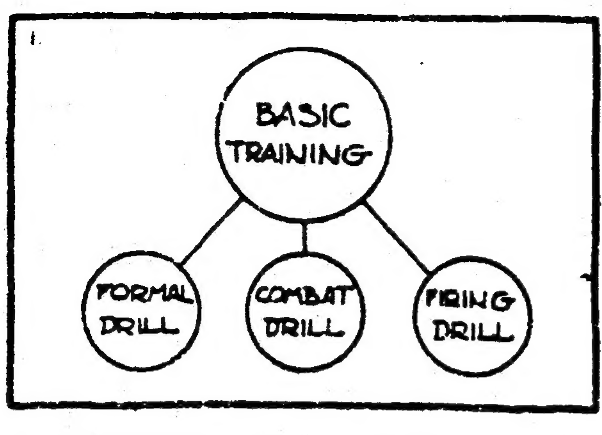
July 1965

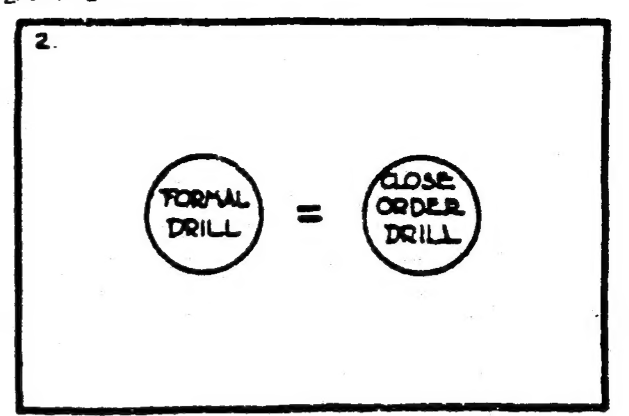
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

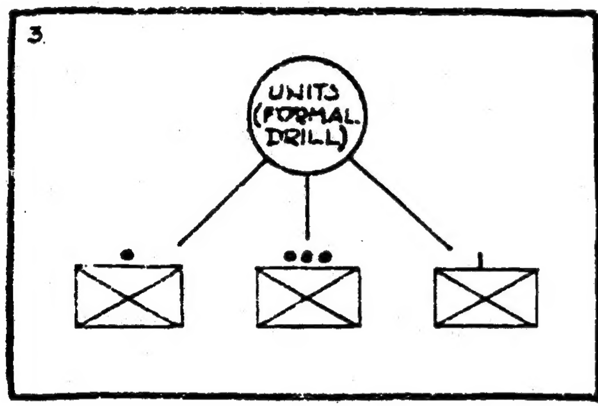
CONTENTS

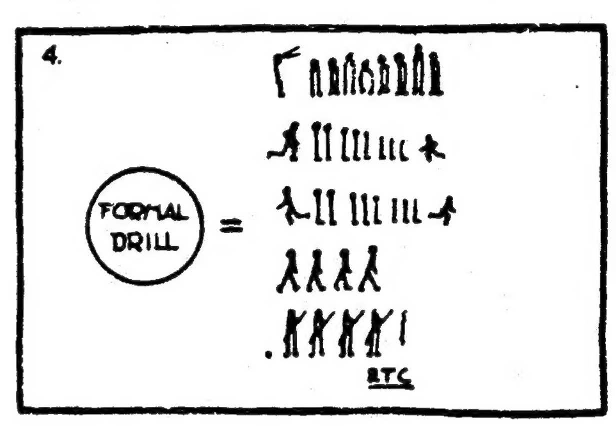
PART I

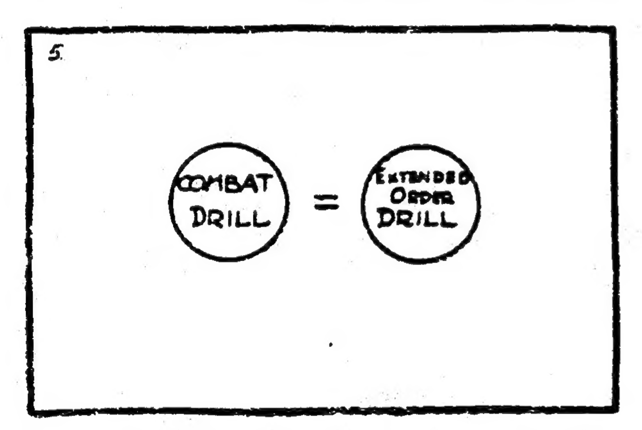
LESSON 1

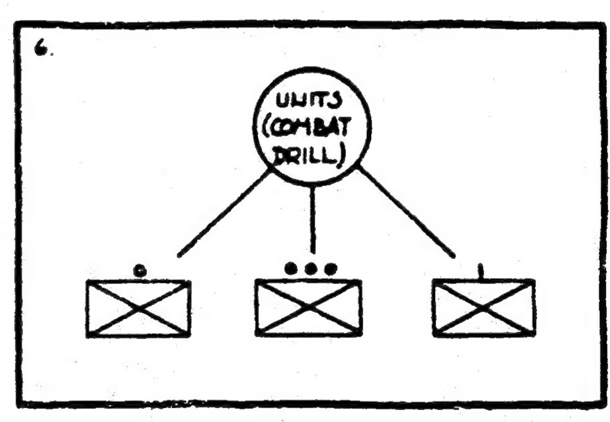


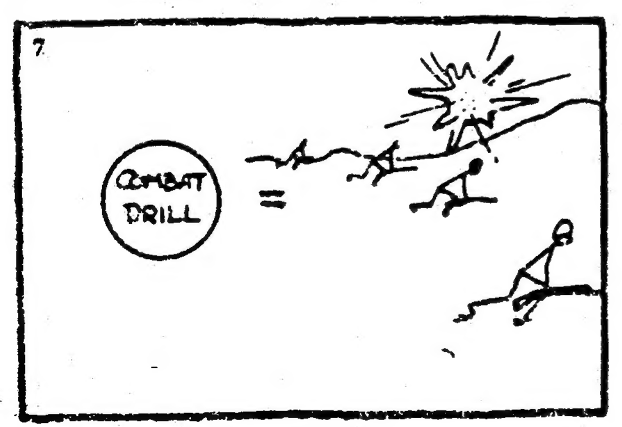


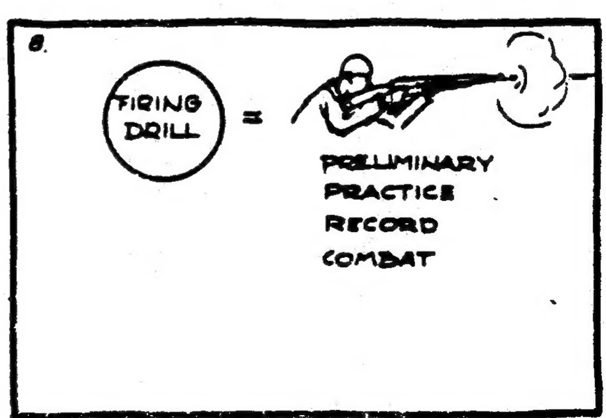












LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kwan-yăn yâp-ng̃ chi-haû, heî-shaú kè fân-lîn haî mi-yĕ?

Taâp: Kwan-yăn yâp-ng̃ chi-haû, heî-shaú kè fân-lîn haî kei-poón fân-lîn.

M: Kei-poón fân-lîn paau-k'oòt hó toh yĕ, taân-haî tsuì kán-iù kè yĕ haî mi-yĕ?

T: Kei-poón fân-lîn paau-k'oòt hó toh yĕ, taân-haî tsuì kán-iù kè haî chaì-shik kaaù-lîn, chìn-taù kaaù-lîn, t'ùng shê-kik kaaù-lîn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mi-yĕ kaaù-lîn â?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mât-tsaâp tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî paan, p'aaì, lîn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ â?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt tuî-yìng p'in-shìng, tsaâp-hêp t'ùng kaaì-saân, pô-faàt, ts'o-ch'eung faàt, haàng-tsûn, fong-heùng tuî-yìng pìn-oôn tâng-tâng.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mi-yĕ â?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô saân-hoi tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn kè taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn kè taan-waî* yìk-to haî paan, p'aaì, lîn.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt kung-kik kè tuì-yìng t'ùng wân-tûng, waâk-chê fòng-uê kè tuî-yìng t'ùng wân-tûng.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Shê-kik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yě ne?

T: Shê-kik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt shê-kik uê-tsaâp, shê-kik shât-tsaâp, keî-lûk shê-kik-t'ûng chìn-taù shê-kik.

—

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After the service man has enlisted, what is the beginning training?

Answer: After the service man has enlisted, the beginning training is the basic training.

Q: Basic training includes many things; what are the most important?

A: Basic training includes many things. But the most important are formal drill, combat drill, and firing drill.

Q: What is formal drill also called?

A: Formal drill is also called close order drill.

Q: What are the basic units of formal drill?

A: The basic units of formal drill are the squad, platoon and company.

Q: What does formal drill include?

A: The formal drill includes formation, fall-in and fall-out, gait, manual of arms, march, change of direction and formation.

Q: What is combat drill also called?

A: Combat drill is also called extended order drill.

Q: What are the units of combat drill?

A: The units of combat drill are also the squad, platoon, and company.

Q: What does combat drill include?

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Combat drill includes the formation and movement in attack or defense.

Q: What does firing drill include?

A: Firing drill includes preliminary firing, practice firing, record firing, and combat firing.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The movements of these units were carefully planned by General Fong.
2. I can see that company A is not in formation.
3. Instructor Wong will teach you manual of arms day after tomorrow.
4. Get your men to fall-in and then march them to the dining hall for breakfast.
5. You have to learn the preliminary firing before practice firing. They are not exactly the same.
6. According to my opinion, they should have more practices on extended order drill.
7. This unit will not be dismissed until everyone of them knows the gait drills thoroughly.
8. I want to see you people executing the close order drill as well as those people.
9. When you hear my signal, all of you will advance and attack.
10. Can you tell me exactly what record firing is?
11. It is the duty of every man, woman and child to defend their own country.
12. When you reach the intersection your unit will make a complete change of direction and formation.
13. Combat drill is very important especially in hand-to-hand fighting.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. The new recruits are doing formal drills every morning for one and a half hour.
15. Basic training for a soldier begins with formal drill.
16. What did you learn when you were in high school?

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	chaì-shik kaaù-lîn	formal drill, the drill to develop control, discipline, teamwork, and facility in execution
2.	chìn-taù kaaù-lîn	combat drill
3.	fong-heùng tuî-yìng pìn-oôn	change of direction and formation
4.	hăng-tsùn	march; to advance
5.	kaaî-saàn	fall-out; to disorganize
6.	keî-lûk shê-kik	record firing
7.	kung-kik	attack; to attack
8.	mât-tsaâp tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn	close order drill
9.	pô-faàt	gait
10.	saàn-hoi tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn	extended order drill
11.	shê-kik shât-tsaâp	practice firing
12.	shê-kik uê-tsaâp	preliminary firing
13.	tsaâp-hôp	fall-in; to assemble
14.	ts'o-ts'eung-faàt	manual of the rifle; manual of arms
15.	tuî-yìng p'in-shìng	formation organizing, formation
16.	wân-tûng	movement; to move

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

333

畢 pat: the final, end; complete.

完畢 uōn-pat: over; ended.

畢竟 pat-kíng: after all; finally.

182

罰 fât (faât): to punish; fine; forfeit

責罰 chaâk-fât: reprimand; blame

賞罰 sheông fât: rewards and punishment

罰款 fât foón: fines; to fine

1308

罪 tsuî: fault; sin; crime; punishment.

罪惡 tsuî-ôk: crime; sin.

罪過 tsuî-kwòh: fault; offense; misdemeanour.

死罪 sí tsuî: death sentence

定罪 tèng tsuî: to fix a punishment.

畢 罰 罪

畢 罰 罪

畢 罰 罪

1166

盜 tô: to rob; to steal, a robber; pirate; robbery

盜賊 tô-ts'aâk: bandit; robber.

強盜 k'eûng tô: highway robber.

盜賣 tô maaî: to sell property which has been stolen from other.

1196

賊 ts'aâk: thief; robber.

賊頭 ts'aâk t'aū: leader of the robbers.

小賊 siû ts'aâk: a petty thief.

盜 賊

盜 賊

盜 賊

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1168

稻 tô: growing rice.

稻草 tô ts'ó: straw.

稻田 tô t'In rice field.

186

匪 .féi: vagabond; seditions

土匪 t'ó féi: bandit

匪徒 féi-t'ö: robbers

120

朱 chue: red color

朱紅 chue-hung: scarlet; vermillion

朱顏 chue-ngaan: ruddy face

稻 匪 朱

稻 匪 朱

稻 匪 朱

1436

王 wõng: king; prince; ruler.

王位 wõng wai: throne; rank of king.

1416

喂 wai· to feed; to suckle.

喂奶 wai naai: to suckle. to feed with milk.

王 喂

王 喂

王 餵 餧 喂

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

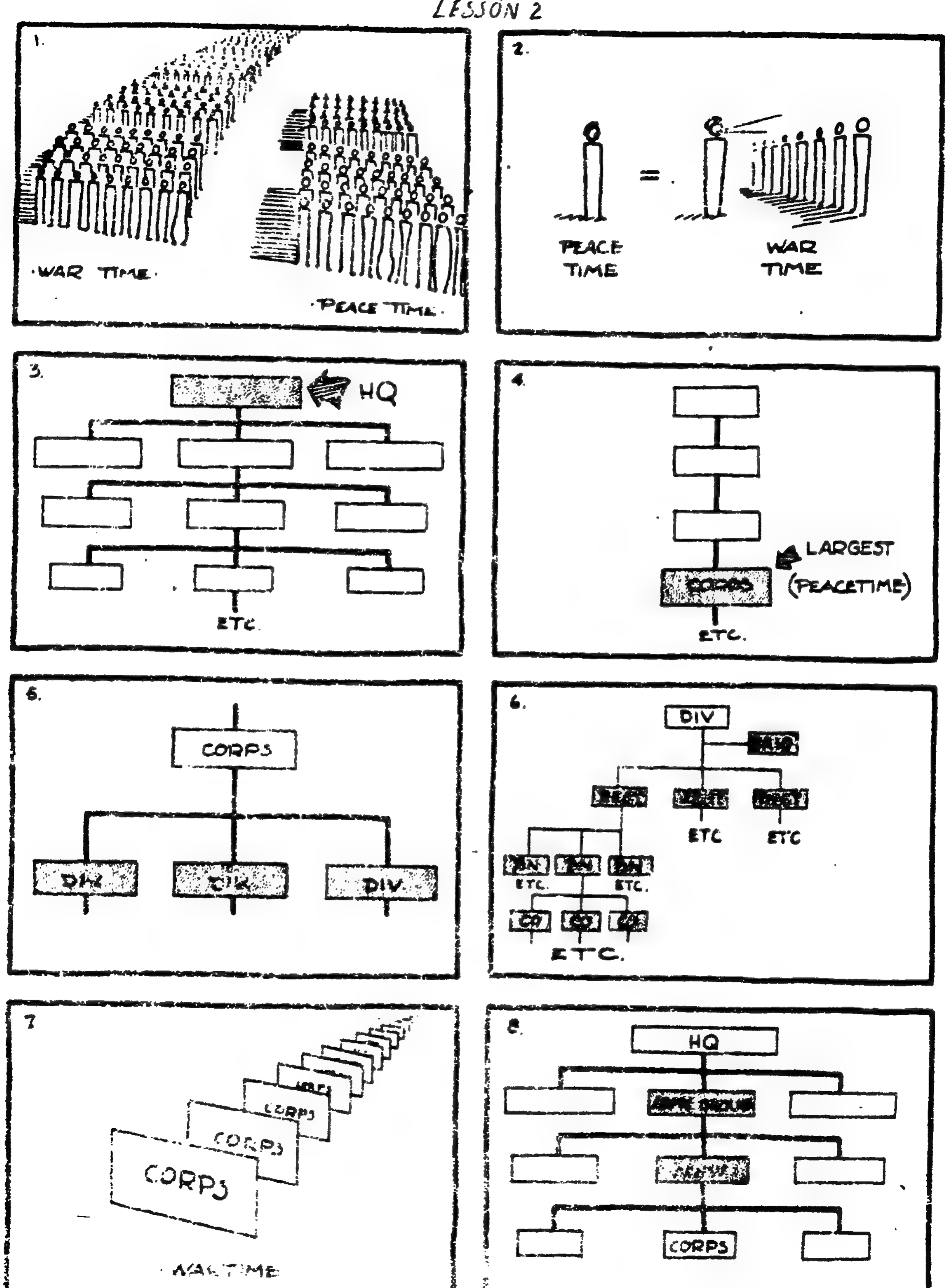
基本訓練係軍人開始所受訓練。此種訓練之主要部份係制式教練、戰鬥教練、同射擊教練。制式教練又稱為密集隊形教練。此種教練之基本單位為班、排、連。教練包含隊形編成、集合、解散、步法、操槍法、行進、方向、隊形變換等等。戰鬥教練又稱為散開隊形教練。基本單位亦為班、排、連。教練包含攻擊或者防禦之隊形同運動。射擊教練有射擊預習、射擊實習、紀錄射擊、同戰鬥射擊。

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Information
畢	Character Number 833; Radical Number 102; Stroke Number 11; 田
罰	Character Number 182; Radical Number 122; Stroke Number 14; 罒 , 罓
罪	Character Number 1308; Radical Number 122; Stroke Number 13; 罒 , 罓
盜	Character Number 1166; Radical Number 108; Stroke Number 12; 皿
賊	Character Number 1196; Radical Number 154; Stroke Number 13; 貝

LESSON 2



1.
WAR TIME
PEACE TIME
2.
PEACE TIME
=
WAR TIME
3.
HQ
ETC.
4.
LARGEST (PEACETIME)
CORPS
ETC.
5.
CORPS
DIV
DIV
DIV
6.
DIV
ETC
ETC
BN
BN
BN
ETC.
ETC.
CO
CO
CO
ETC.
7
CORPS
CORPS
CORPS
CORPS
WARTIME
8.
HQ
CORPS

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kwòk-fōng-pô haî yat-kòh mi-yě kei-kwaan?

Taàp: Kwòk-fōng-pô haî kwòk-ka tsuì ko kè kwan-chìng kei-kwaan.

M: Kwòk-fōng-pô foô-chaàk mi-yě à? Chì-fai mi-yě à?

T: Kwòk-fōng-pô foô-chaàk kwòk-fōng kè sẑ-mŏ, chì-fai hoì, lûk, hung saam kwan.

M: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shì kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shì kè p'in-chaì t'ūng m̀-t'ūng à?

T: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shì kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shì kè p'in-chaì m̀-t'ūng.

M: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shì kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shì kè p'in-chaì tìm-yeûng* m̀-t'ūng à?

T: Chìn-shì kè p'in-chaì peì-kaaù p'ìng-shì kè p'in-chaì taaî hô toh, p'ìng-shì p'in-chaì-piû kè yān-uēn haî iû laì tsô chìn-shì kè kòn-pô.

M: Lûk-kwan tsuì ko kè kei-kwaan haî mi-yě à?

T: Lûk-kwan tsuì ko kè kei-kwaan haî lûk-kwan tsûng-sz-lìng-pô.

M: P'ìng-shì lûk-kwan tsuì taaî kè taan-waî* haî mi-yě à?

T: P'ìng-shì lûk-kwan tsuì taaî kè taan-waî* haî kwan.

M: Kwan kè hâ-pîn yaŭ mi-yě à?

T: Kwan kè hâ-pîn yaŭ sz, sz kè hâ-pîn yaŭ t'uēn, yìng, lìn, tâng tâng.

M: Chìn-shì lûk-kwan kè p'in-chaì tìm-yeûng* à?

T: Chìn-shì lûk-kwan kè p'in-chaì fei-sheūng-chi taaî, kwan kè taan-waî* tsaû fei-sheūng-chi toh.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Chìn-shî lûk-kwan tsúng-pô kẻ hâ-pîn tsang-ka mi-yě taan-waî* à?

T: Chìn-shî lûk-kwan tsúng-pô kẻ hâ-pîn tsang-ka tsaâp t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn.

M: Tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan, kwan-t'uēn, t'ūng kwan, pin kòh chì ko, pin kòh chì tai à?

T: Tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan, kwan-t'uēn, t'ūng kwan, tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan chì ko, k'eì-ts'ẑ haî kwan-t'uēn, chì tai haî kwan.

M: Chìn-shî lûk-kwan tsúng-pô tîm-kaaî iù yaū tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn kẻ taan-waî* à?

T: Waî chi-fai-haî-t'ūng fong-pîn heî-kìn, shōh-ī haî lûk-kwan tsúng-pô t'ūng kwan kẻ chung-kaan yaū tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What kind of organization is the Ministry of National Defense?

Answer: The Ministry of National Defense is the Nation's highest military organization.

Q: For what is the Ministry of National Defense responsible and what does it command?

A: The Ministry of National Defense is responsible for national defense affairs. It commands the three branches of armed services--Navy, Army and Air Force.

Q: Does the Army peace time organization differ from that of war time?

A: The Army peace time organization differs from that of war time.

Q: In what manner does the Army peace time organization differ from that of war time?

A: The war time organization is much larger than that of peace time. The personnel who are in the peace time table of organization are to become the war time cadre.

Q: What is the Army's highest organization?

A: The Army's highest organization is the Army's General Headquarters.

Q: During peace time, what are the Army's largest units?

A: During peace time, the Army's largest units are corps level units.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What units are under the corps level units?

A: Under the corps level units, there are division. Under the divisions, there are regiments, battalions, companies, etc.

Q: How about the Army's organization during the war time?

A: During the war time, the Army organization is unusually large. Units of corps level are many.

Q: During war time, what units are added under the Army's General Headquarters?

A: During war time, Army groups and army level units are added under the Army's General Headquarters.

Q: Of the army groups, army level units and corps level units, which is the highest and which is the lowest?

A: Of the army groups, army level units and corps level units, the army group is the highest. The next would be the army level unit. The corps level unit is the lowest.

Q: During war time, why does the Army General Headquarters have to have army groups and army level units?

A: For the sake of convenience in the command system. There are army groups and army level units between the Army General Headquarters and the corps level units.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Col Lee is the liaison officer who was sent from headquarters to this post.
2. There are more than 200,000 men and officers in this army group.
3. This is not an ordinary time. I want all of you to report here notlater than 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.
4. Familiarize yourself with this table of organization. That's all.
5. The method of organization should be the same whether in peace or war time.
6. When you submit your report, it should be clear, simple and precise.
7. If you do not understand the chain of command of this headquarters you should study it and learn it by heart.
8. They may be old soldiers, but they are the cadres of this unit.
9. I would like to see the commanding officer of this corps. I have an important appointment with him.
10. The U.S. Sixth Army headquarters is in San Francisco, Calif.
11. You may go directly to General Lee's office. He is waiting for you.
12. If the Captain is not here, who is going to take command of this company?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSITION

13. Your squad is responsible for the defense of this area. See to it that the order is carried out.
14. Here are your instructions. Are there any questions?
15. Be prepared to attack the enemy at 0500 hours.
16. This is war time. You will have to follow orders.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	chî-fai haî-t'ũng	chain of command
2.	k'ǒk-shât	exactness; exact
3.	kǒn-pô	cadre
4.	kwan-t'uēn	army level unit
5.	p'in-chaì	method of organization
6.	p'in-chaì piũ	table of organization
7.	p'ìng-shì	peace time, ordinary time
8.	tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan	army group

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

1104

隸 tai: mountain plum; dignified; servant; slave; attached to; joined to.

隸屬 tai-shuk: belong to; attached to.

39

抽 ch'au: to lift, levy, whip

抽起 ch'au-hei: to lift up

抽筋 ch'au-kan: spasm, cramps

173

廢 fai: to throw away; destroy; annul

廢物 fai-mat: worthless articles

廢除 fai-ch'ui: to abolish; to abrogate

隸 抽 廢

1250

剪 tsin: to cut off; to shear; to remove, shear.

剪刀 tsin-to: scissors; shears.

剪頭髮 tsin t'au-fat: to cut the hair.

126

柱 ch'ue: pillar; post (Cl. t'iu)

石柱 shek ch'ue: stone pillar



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

179

糞 fàn: manure; night soil; dung

糞肥 fàn-feī: refuse, manure

糞廁 fàn-ts'ì: a privy

落糞 lôk-fàn: to manure

314

喝 hòt: to call out; bawl

喝住 hòt-chuê: call to stop

喝彩 hòt-tsʼoí: to applaud; acclamation

162

凡 faān: all; common; everyone

但凡 taân-faān: whatever; whoever

凡事 faān-sê: anything, everything

糞 喝 凡

糞 喝 凡

糞 喝 凡 凡

112

莊 chong: serious; sedate

端莊 tuen-chong: dignified

1395

乙 uèt: to mark; stem; curved.

甲乙 kaàp uèt: the first and second.

莊 乙

莊 乙

莊 乙

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

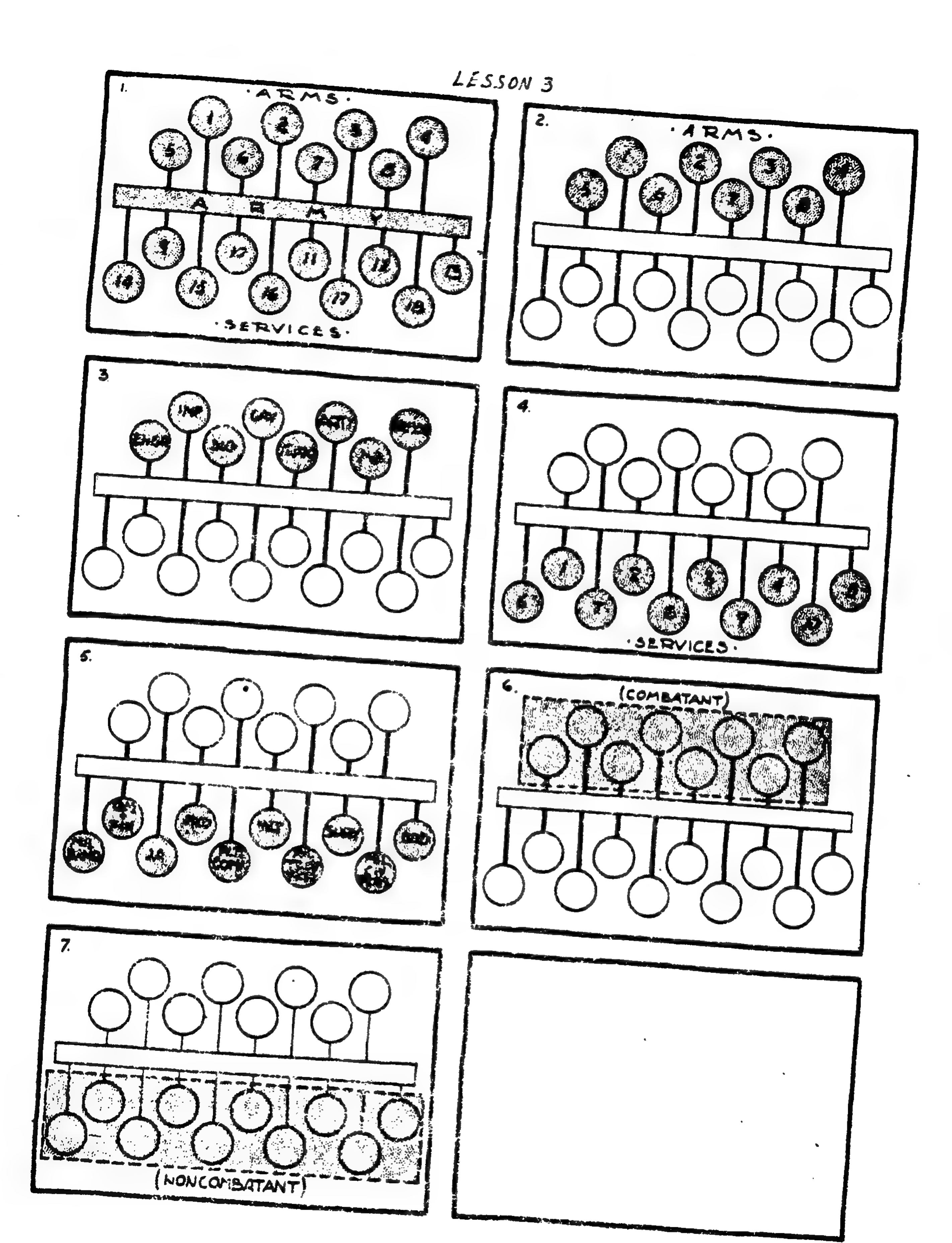
陸軍之平時編制與戰時編制不同。因為戰時編制比較平時者大好多，所以平時編制表上所列人員變為戰時之幹部。陸軍最高機關為陸軍總司令部。平時陸軍最大單位係軍。軍之下有師。師之下有團，營，連，等等。戰時因為陸軍編制非常之大。軍之單位就非常之多。為指揮系統方便同確實起見。所以在陸軍總部與軍之中間加設集團軍同軍團。經此改編，軍即隸屬於軍團之下。

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical
隸	1104	16	171	隶
抽	39	8	64	扌, 手
廢	171	15	53	广
剪	1250	11	18	刀
柱	126	9	75	木, 木

LESSON 3



1.
ARMS
A R M Y
SERVICES
2.
ARMS
3.
4.
SERVICES
5.
6.
(COMBATANT)
7.
(NONCOMBATANT)

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh tsúng-kûng yaŭ keî-toh chúng à?

Taàp: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh tsúng-kûng yaŭ shâp-paàt chúng.

M: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh yaŭ pin keî chúng à?

T: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh yaŭ paàt chúng, tsik-haî pô-ping, k'ē-ping, p'aaù-ping, chong-kaàp-ping, kung-ping, t'ung-sùn-ping, tsz-chûng-ping, t'ūng hìn-ping.

M: Îp-foh yaŭ pin keî chúng à?

T: Îp-foh yaŭ shâp chúng, tsik-haî king-leĭ (kwan-sui t'ūng ts'oì-chìng), kwan-i, shaù-i, ch'ak-leūng, ping-kung, kwan-ngôk, kwan-faàt, chìng-kung, kwan-yûng keî-shût yān-uēn, t'ūng kwan-yûng mān-chik yān-uēn.

M: Ni shâp-paàt chúng ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh hôh-ĭ fan-shìng pin leūng luî yān-uēn à?

T: Ni shâp-paàt chúng ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh hôh-ĭ fan-shìng chìn-taù yān-uēn t'ūng fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Ping-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn yik-waâk haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn à?

T: Ping-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Ping-foh yān-uēn foô-chaàk mi-yĕ yâm-mô à?

T: Ping-foh yān-uēn foô-chaàk-chìn-taù kè yâm-mô.

M: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn yik-waâk fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn à?

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî ts'ìn-sìn kung-tsǒk yik-waâk haî haû-fong kung-tsǒk à?

T: Îp-foh yān-uēn keì-ìn haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn, k'uī-teî toh-shǒ haî haû-fong kung-tsǒk; yaū-shì k'uī-teî yîk-to haî ts'ìn-sìn kung-tsǒk.

M: Îp-foh kè chìng-kung yān-uēn foô-chaàk pin chûng kung-tsǒk à?

T: Îp-foh kè chìng-kung yān-uēn haî kwan-tuî* luī-pîn kè chìng-chî kung-tsǒk yān-uēn. K'uī-teî foô-chaàk kwan-tuî* kè chìng-chî kung-tsǒk, t'ūng tuì tîk-yān kè sam-leī tsǒk-chìn, suen-ch'uēn, tâng-tâng.

M: Uē-kwôh haî kôm, yaū-ti chìng-kung yān-uēn shûk-ue chìn-taù yān-uēn, haî mà?

T: Haî, yaū-ti chìng-kung yān-uēn shûk-ue chìn-taù yān-uēn.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: How many branches of arms and services are there in the Army?

Answer: There are eighteen branches of arms and services in the Army.

Q: Which are the arm branches in the Army?

A: There are eight branches of arms in the Army, namely, the infantry, the cavalry, the artillery, the armored unit, the engineers, the signal communication units, the transportation personnel, and the military police.

Q: Which are the branches of service in the Army?

A: There are ten branches of service, namely, the quartermaster and finance, the medical, the veterinary (veterinarian), the survey, the ordnance, the military band, the judge advocate, the political commissar, the military technician, and the army civilian personnel.

Q: Which are the two categories of personnel that can be grouped from these eighteen branches of arms and services?

A: The personnel in these eighteen branches of arms and services can be grouped into the combatant and the noncombatant.

Q: Are the personnel in the arms branches the combatants or noncombatants?

A: The personnel in the arms branches are combatants.

Q: What is the mission undertaken by the personnel in the arms branches?

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The personnel in the arms branches are responsible for the combat mission.

Q: Are the personnel in the branches of service the combatants or noncombatants?

A: The personnel in the branches of service are the noncombatants.

Q: Are the personnel in the service branches working at the front or rear?

A: Since the personnel in the service branches are noncombatants, they mostly work at the rear; sometimes they also work at the front.

Q: For what kind of work are the personnel of the political commissar responsible?

A: Since the political commissar personnel in the service branches are the political personnel in the Army, they are responsible for the political work in the Army, the psychological warfare against the enemy, and the propaganda.

Q: If that is the case, some of the personnel of the political commissar are combatants, right?

A: Yes, some of the personnel of the political commissar are the combatants.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Veterinarians are very important.
2. Transportation personnel are non-combantants.
3. My financial condition was very bad in 1930.
4. Ordinarily, members of the military band do not go to the front.
5. Do you know the difference between the ordnance corps and the engineer corps?
6. Please deliver this truck-load of provisions to the division quartermaster.
7. You have to report this to the officer at the judge advocate office.
8. Sometimes, the quartermaster and the finance branches work together.
9. Your technique is excellent; do you think you can teach me?
10. Nowadays, cavalrymen do not ride on horses any more.
11. Let us discuss the technical points of this case tomorrow.
12. The political department is one of the ten branches of service in the Chinese Army.
13. Engineers will do all the surveying this week.
14. Armored units are very important in modern warfare.
15. Open the door immediately. It is the military police.
16. You will report to the medical officer at the hospital tonight.
17. This cavalry is a famous unit of the U.S. Army.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1. ch'ak-leūng — to survey; survey
2. chìng-kung — political commissar
3. chong-kaàp-ping, (chìn-ch'e-ping) — armored unit
4. fei-chìn-taù yàn-uēn — non-combatant
5. hìn-ping — military police
6. îp-foh — branch of service
7. k'ē-ping — cavalryman, cavalry
8. keî-shût — technical; technique
9. king-leĭ — quartermaster and finance
10. kung-ping — engineer
11. kwan-faàt — judge advocate
12. kwan-i — medical
13. kwan-ngôk — military band
14. kwan-sui — quartermaster
15. kwan-yûng — for military purpose; military
16. ping-kung — ordnance
17. ts'ìng-sìn — front
18. ts'oī-chìng — finance
19. tsz-chûng-ping — transportation personnel
20. shaù-i — veterinarian; veterinary

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

945

伸 shan: to stretch out or forth; extend.

伸直 shan chîk: to straighten out.

伸缩 shan-shuk: to expand and contract.

745

瓦 ngǎ: earthenware; tile pottery.

瓦面 ngǎ-mín: a roof.

瓦窑 ngǎ iū: a kiln.

芽 ngā: a bud; sprout; to begin.

芽菜 ngā-ts'oi: bean sprout.

伸　　瓦　　芽

伸瓦芽

伸　　瓦　　芽

393

甲 kaàp: scales; finger nails armor, a certain person

指甲 chí-kaàp: finger nails

鉄甲 t'ìt-kaàp: an ironclad

某甲 maū-kaàp: a certain man

1213

則 tsak: rule; law; then.

則可 tsak hóh: then it is alright.



READING MATERIAL

746

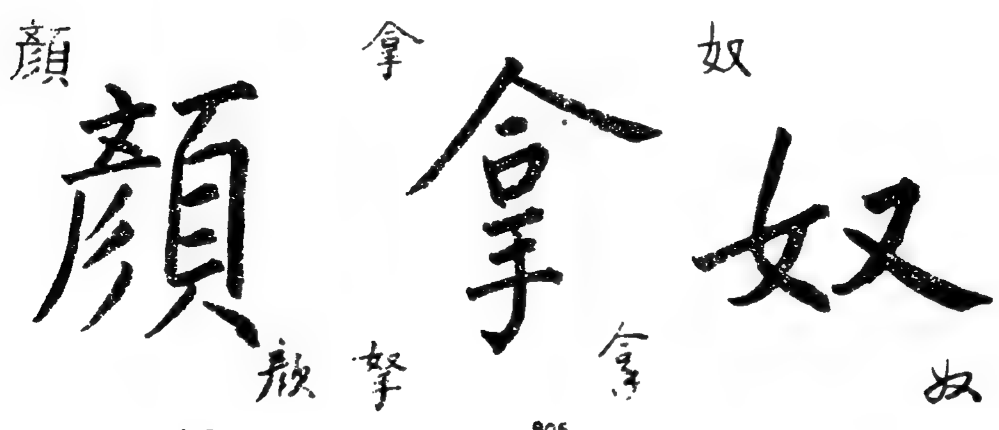
- 顏 ngaān: color; countenance.
- 顏色 ngaān-shik: color; colored.
- 顏料 ngaān-liû: dyes in general.
- 紅顏 hūng-ngaān: a rosy face.

726

- 拿 nā: to grasp; to carry; to bring
- 拿手 nā-shaû: dexterous; expert.
- 捉拿 chuk nā: to arrest; to seize.
- 拿破崙 nā-p'ŏh-lūn: Napoleon.

768

- 奴 nō: a slave; servant.
- 奴隸 nō-taî: a slave.
- 奴僕 nō-pûk: bond-servant.
- 守財奴 shaû-ts'oī-nō: a miser; niggard.



1470

- 若 yeûk: supposing, if; like. as to.
- 若果 yeûk-kwóh: if, supposing.
- 若然 yeûk-ìn: if this is the case.

805

- 爬 p'ā: to climb; to crawl; to scrape; to scratch; to rake.
- 爬上 p'ā sheûng: to climb up.
- 爬行 p'ā hāng: to creep; to crawl.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

陸軍分為兵科與業科兩科，共有十八種。兵科八種，即是步兵，騎兵，砲兵，裝甲兵，工兵，通信兵，輜重兵，同憲兵。

業科十種，即是經理，軍醫，獸醫，測量，兵工，軍樂，軍法，政工，軍用技術人員，同軍用文職人員。

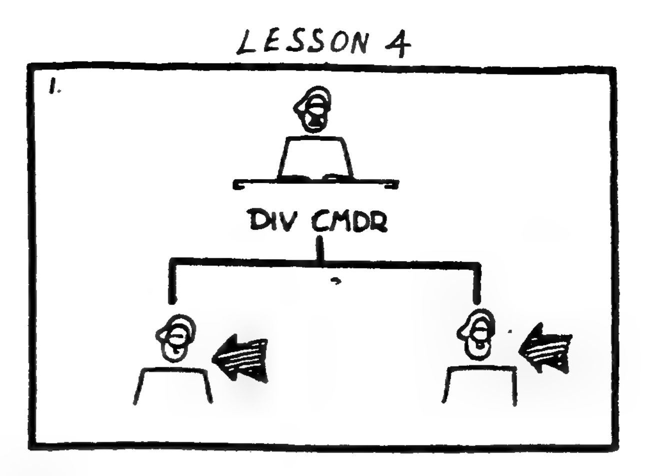
此十八種兵業科人員大概可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員兩類。兵科人員係戰鬥人員。業科人員係非戰鬥人員。政工本來屬業科，但有等政工人員，若然擔任心理作戰及宣傳等工作，則亦稱為戰鬥人員。

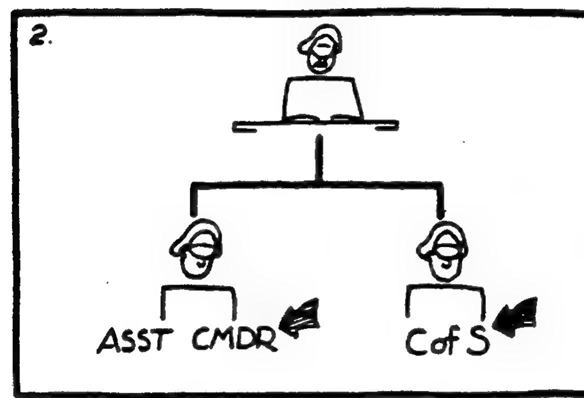
LESSON 3

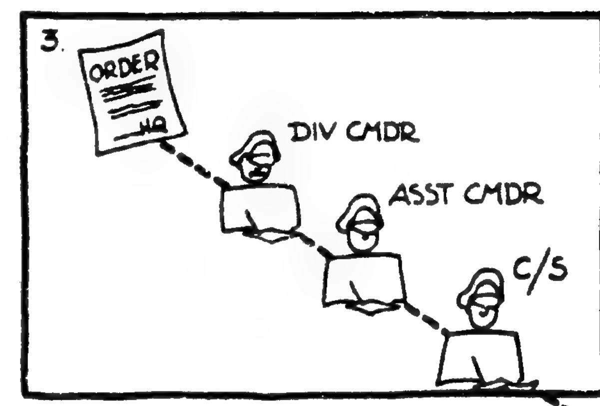
WRITING MATERIAL

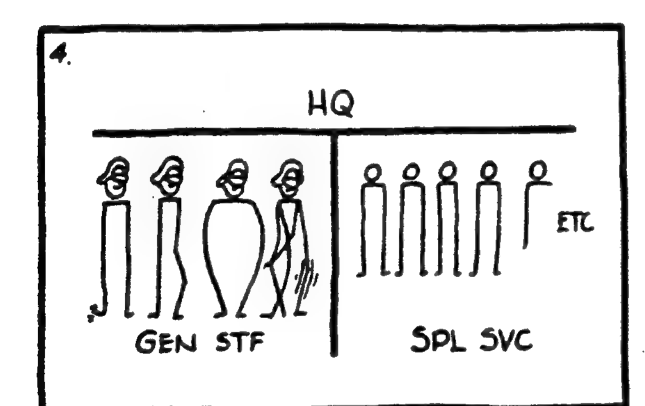
Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical
伸	945	7	9	亻 , 人
瓦	745	4	98	瓦
芽	744	8	140	艹 , 艸
顏	746	18	181	頁
奴	768	5	38	女

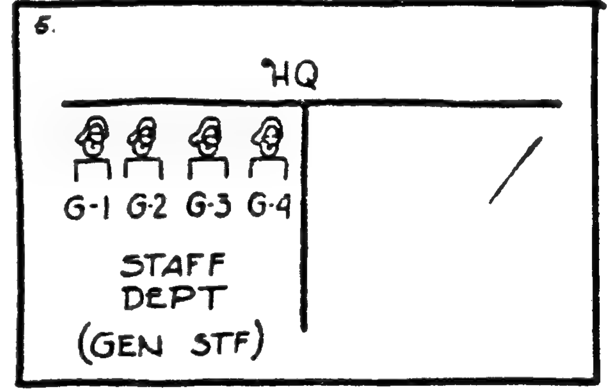
LESSON 4

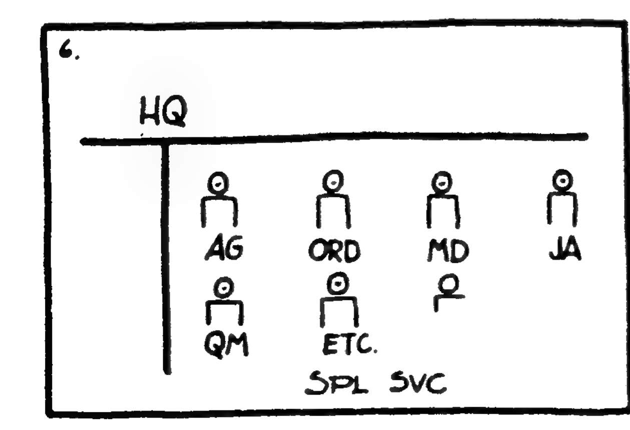

1.
DIV CMDR

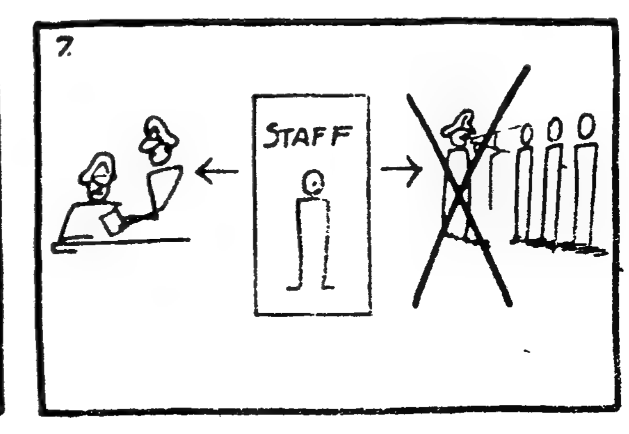

2.
ASST CMDR
C of S


3.
ORDER
HQ
DIV CMDR
ASST CMDR
C/S


4.
HQ
ETC
GEN STF
SPL SVC


5.
HQ
G-1 G-2 G-3 G-4
STAFF
DEPT
(GEN STF)


6.
HQ
AG
ORD
MD
JA
QM
ETC.
SPL SVC


7.
STAFF

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Yat-kòh sz kè tsuì ko cheûng-koon haî pin kòh ne?

Taàp: Yat kòh sz kè tsuì ko cheûng-koon haî sz-cheûng.

M: Yat-kòh sz ch'uî-chòh sz-cheûng chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ chuê-iû kè cheûng-koon ne?

T: Yat-kòh sz ch'uî-chòh sz-cheûng chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ leŭng-kòh chuê-iû cheûng-koon, tsik-haî foò sz-cheûng t'ûng ts'aam-maû-cheûng.

M: Sz-lîng-pô hâ mîng-lîng peî pô-hâ pô-tuî* kè shî-haû, yaû pin kòh ts'im-mĕng*?

T: Sz-lîng-pô hâ mîng-lîng peî pô-hâ pô-tuî* kè shî-haû, yaû sz-cheûng ts'im-mêng*, taân-haî foò sz-cheûng t'ûng ts'aam-maû-cheûng yîk-to iû ts'im-mêng*.

M: Sz-lîng-pô kè ts'aam-maû fan-hoi keî toh luî ne?

T: Sz-lîng-pô kè ts'aam-maû fan-hoi waî yat-poon ts'aam-maû t'ûng tâk-îp ts'aam-maû leŭng-luî.

M: Yat-poon ts'aam-maû yaû kiû-tsô mi yĕ à? Yat-poon ts'aam-maû yaŭ keî toh kòh foh à?

T: Yat-poon ts'aam-maû yaû kiû-tsô ts'aam-maû-ch'uè, ni koh ch'uè luî-pîn yaŭ seî-kòh foh, tsik-haî taî-yat foh, taî-î foh, taî-saam foh t'ûng taî-seî foh.

M: Ni seî-kòh foh kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ à?

T: Taî-yat foh foô-chaàk yân-sz, taî-î foh foô-chaàk ts'îng-pò, taî-saam foh foô-chaàk kaaû-yûk t'ûng fân-lîn, taî-seî foh foô-chaàk kwan-sui.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL DIALOGUE

M: Tâk-îp ts'aam-maū foô-chaâk mi-yĕ â? K'uī kè tsô-chik haî tîm-yeûng* kâ?

T: Tâk-îp ts'aam-maū paân-leī k'eī-t'a kôk chûng sẑ-mô, k'uī fan-waî foò-koon-ch'uè, ping-kung-ch'uè, kwan-i-ch'uè, kwan-faât-ch'uè, king-leī-ch'uè, tâng-tâng.

M: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn kè chuê-iù chik-chaâk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn kè chuê-iù chik-chaâk haî hîp-chôh ts'aam-maū-cheûng, shôh-ī k'uī-teî to haî ts'aam-maū-cheûng kè chôh-shaû.

M: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn yaŭ mŏ k'uēn chî-fai pô-tuî* kâ?

T: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn mŏ k'uēn chî-fai pô-tuî*, taân-haî hôh-ī chî-tô pô-tuî*.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Who is the highest commanding officer of a division?

Answer: The division commander is the highest commanding officer of a division.

Q: Besides the division commander who are the other senior officers in a division?

A: Besides the division commander, there are two senior officers in a division, they are the assistant commander of the division and the chief of staff.

Q: Who will sign an order when it is issued to the subordinate units by the Hq?

A: The division commander will sign an order when it is issued to the subordinate units from the Hq, but the assistant commander and the chief of staff also have to sign.

Q: Into how many categories is the staff of the Hq divided?

A: The staff of the Hq is divided into two categories, the general staff and the special service staff.

Q: By what name is the general staff also known? Of how many departments is the general staff somposed?

A: The general staff is also known as the staff department and is composed of four sections, G-1, G-2, G-3, and G-4.

Q: For what are these four sections responsible?

A: G-1 is responsible for personnel, G-2 is responsible for intelligence, G-3 is responsible for military education and training, and G-4 is responsible for quartermaster.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: For what is the special service staff responsible, and how is it organized?

A: The special service staff manages other business and is divided into the adjutant department, the ordnance department, the medical department, judge advocate department, the quartermaster and the finance department, etc.

Q: What is the main duty of the staff personnel?

A: The main duty of the staff personnel is to assist the chief of staff, therefore all of them are the assistants of the chief of staff.

Q: Has the staff personnel any authority to command troops?

A: The staff personnel have no authority to command troops, but may assist them as advisors.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. In general, the chart will help the students to learn this lesson well.
2. The adjutant general department is a part of the special service staff.
3. G-2 is responsible for intelligence, whereas G-4 is for quartermaster.
4. The division commander wants to see you at the headquarters immediately.
5. You should send all your subordinates to the hospital for a physical check-up once every three months.
6. May I speak to Capt Chang of the Ordnance department please.
7. I have no authority to issue this order to you.
8. The assistant division commander will go to the quartermaster and finance department tomorrow.
9. I want to see all the personnel of this department present at the meeting.
10. Who is our political director, and do you know him?
11. The officers will sit in the front and the others will sit a little further back
12. He may not know how to do it himself, but he can advise you on matters of technical nature.
13. Units under the direct control of the 3rd Army will be here soon.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. She does not have authority here, but she is an influential person.
15. S-3 is responsible for education and training.
16. The staff consists of military and civilians.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	chî-tô	to direct, guide, advise
2.	chîk-shûk pô-tuî*	units under direct control
3.	chìng-chî chì-tô-uēn	political director
4.	chôh-shaû	aide, assistant
5.	foò-koon-ch'uè	adjutant general dept
6.	hâ mîng-lîng	to issue order
7.	king-leĭ-ch'uè	QM and Finance Dept
8.	k'uēn, k'uēn-lîk	authority, power
9.	ping-kung-ch'uè	ordnance dept
10.	pô-hâ	subordinate
11.	taî-yat foh	the 1st branch (equal to G-1)
12.	tâk-îp ts'aam-maū	special service staff
13.	t'ō-piû	chart

READING MATERIAL

573

擴 kw'ǒng or k'ǒng: to expand; to extend.

擴充 kw'ǒng-ch'ung: to enlarge; to expand(business, school).

擴張 kw'ǒng-cheung: to spread; to enlarge(influence)

582

革 kaāk: to remove, change

革命 kaāk-mîng: revolution.

革職 kaāk chik: to remove from office or position

革除 kaāk-ch'uē: to get rid of, to expel

改革 kói-kaāk: to change

亮 leûng: clear; bright, transparent.

光亮 kwong-leûng: bright; illuminated.

響亮 heúng-leûng: clear and loud(voice and music etc.)

擴 扩 革 亮

擴 革 亮

扩 革 亮

95

苗 miū: sprout; descendant; Miao tribe.

禾苗 wōh miū: rice seedlings.

苗裔 miū yuî: posterity.

苗人 miū yān: Miaos.

657

罵 mâ: to rail; to scold, to vilify

罵人 mâ yān: to scold others.

大罵 taaî mâ: a bad scolding.

苗 罵

苗 罵

苗 骂

READING MATERIAL

574

狂 kw'ŏng or k'ŏng: furious, mad; wild rash.

癲狂 tin-kw'ŏng: insane.

發狂 faat-kw'ŏng: become delirious; to lose one's senses.

猖狂 ch'eung-kw'ŏng: outragious; too bold.

5?3

群 kw'ăn: flock, herd; crowd; multitude; to group

群眾 kw'ăn-chung: the multitude; the crowd.

群集 kw'ăn tsaap: to gather together

合群 [illegible]-kw'ăn: [illegible] unite, united.

49?

角 kŏk: a corner; horn of an animal; a coin.

角鬥 kŏk-tau: to wrestle.

口角 haú-kŏk: to quarrel.

三角 saam-kŏk: a triangle.

一角 yat kŏk: a ten cents piece.

狂 群 角

狂 群 角

狂 羣 群 角

493

甘 kom: sweet; pleasant, seasonable.

甘香 kom-heung: delicious flavor.

甘甜 kom-t'im: sweet.

甘[illegible] kom-sam: voluntarily

甘油 kom-yau: glycerine.

4?1

勁 king: strong.

勁敵 king [illegible]: well matched [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]: well matched.

甘 勁 勁

甘 勁

甘 勁

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

一師之指揮官,除師長之外,尚有兩個長官.即係副師長同參謀長.司令部下命令所屬部隊之時,師長要簽名,副師長同參謀長亦要簽名.

司令部參謀分為一般參謀同特業參謀兩類.一般參謀又稱為參謀處,內有第一科,第二科,第三科,同第四科.

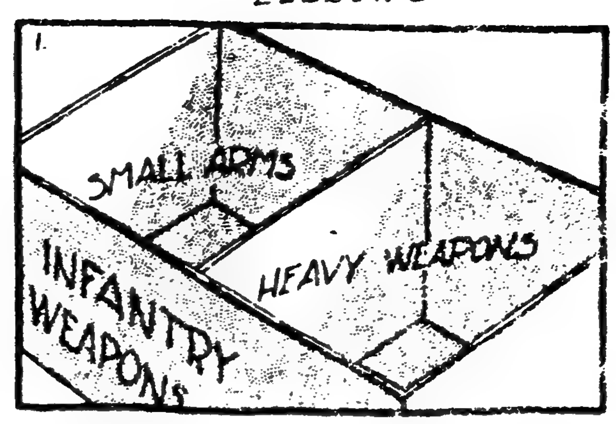
特業參謀有副官處,兵工處,軍醫處,軍法處,經理處等等.所有參謀人員都係參謀長助手,雖無指揮部隊之權,但負有指導職責.

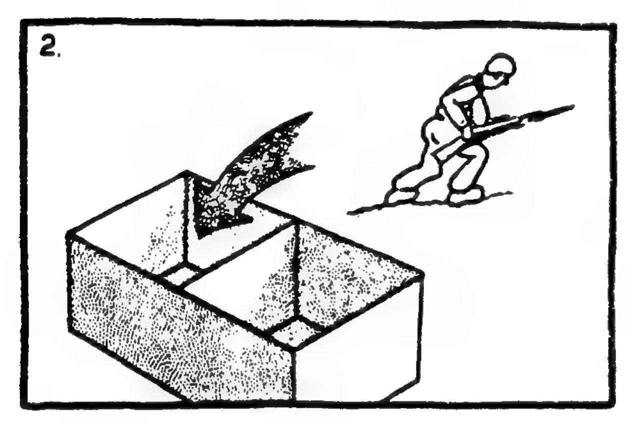
LESSON 4

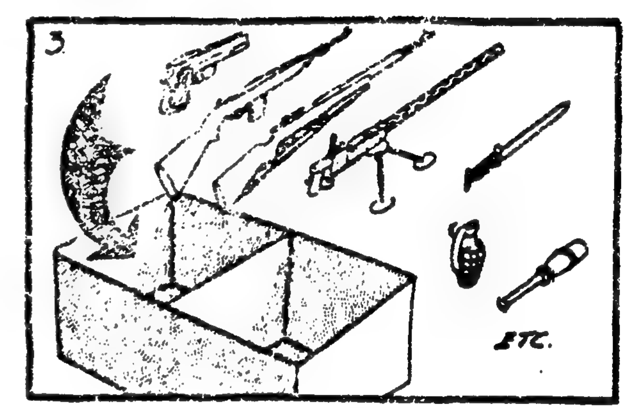
WRITING MATERIAL

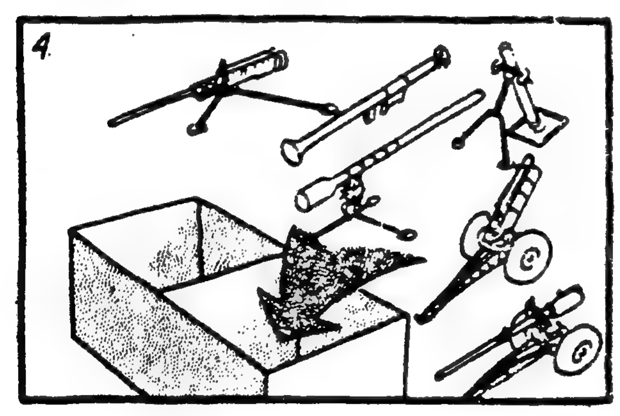
Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical
擴	573	18	64	扌, 手
革	382	9	177	革
罵	657	15	122	罒, 网
群	563	13	123	羊
狂	574	7	94	犭, 犬

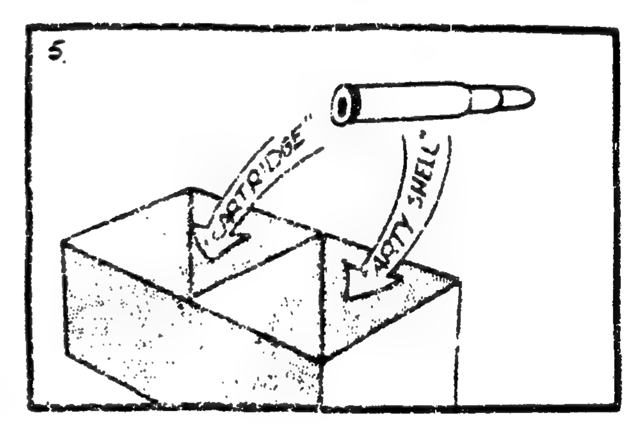
LESSON 5

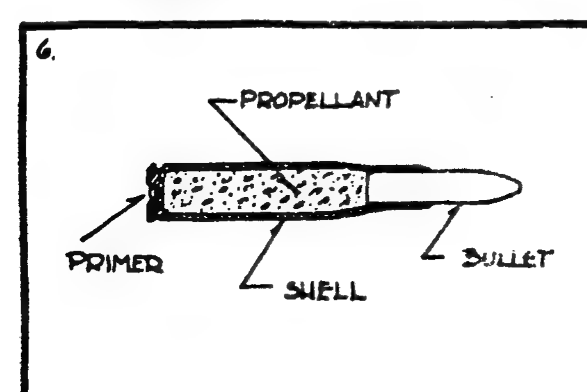

1.
SMALL ARMS
INFANTRY WEAPONS
HEAVY WEAPONS

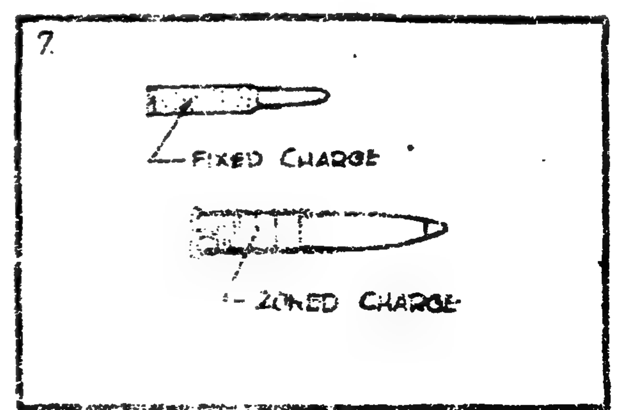

2.


3.
ETC.


4.


5.
"CARTRIDGE"
"ARTY SHELL"


6.
PROPELLANT
PRIMER
SHELL
BULLET


7.
FIXED CHARGE
ZONED CHARGE

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Pô-ping ping-hei hôh-ĭ fan-wai pin leüng-chúng?

Taap: Pô-ping ping-hei hôh-ĭ fan-wai hing ping-hei t'ũng ch'ũng ping-hei leüng-chúng.

M: Hing ping-hei hai tim-yeũng* kă?

T: Hing ping-hei hai kôh-yũn hôh-ĭ kw'ai-taai kè ping-hei.

M: Hing ping-hei paau-k'oôt mi-yě?

T: Hing ping-hei paau-k'oôt shaû-ts'eung, mă-ts'eung, pô-ts'eung, hing kei-kwaan-ts'eung, ts'ô-tô, shaû-laũ-taân*, t'ũng ts'ung-laũ-taân* táng-tăng

M: Ch'ũng ping-hei paau-k'oôt mi-yě?

T: Ch'ũng ping-hei paau-k'oôt ch'ũng kei-kwaan-ts'eung, fôh-tsîn-p'aaû, mă-chôh-lĭk-p'aaû, pik-kik p'aaû, pô-ping laũ-taân*-p'aaû t'ũng p'îng-shê-p'aaû táng-tăng.

M: Ts'eung t'ũng p'aaû vaũ mi-yě m-t'ũng ne?

T: Kau-kui Chung-Kwôk kè ping-hei [illegible] kóng, haû-kîng m-kwôh shâp-kung-lei kè hai ts'eung, haû-kîng taai kwôh shâp-kung-lei kè hai p'aaû.

M: Ts'eung kè taân*-yeũk kiû-tsô mi-yě?

T: Ts'eung kè taân*-yeũk kiû-tsô tsž-taân*.

M: P'aaû kè taân*-yeũk kiû-tsô mi-yě?

T: P'aaû kè taân*-yeũk kiû-tsô p'aaû-taân*.

M: Tsž-taân* [illegible] fei-tsôh pô-[illegible]

T: Tsž-taân* [illegible] saam-pô-fân.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tsź-taân* kè saam-pô-fân kiù-tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-yat pô kiù-tsô taân*-t'aū, taî-î pô kiù-tsô taân*-hòk t'ūng luî-koón, taî-saam pô kiù-tsô chong-yeûk.

M: Pô-ping p'ìng-shê-p'aaù yūng kè taân*-yeûk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Pô-ping p'ìng-shê-p'aaù yūng kè taân*-yeûk haî tìng-chong-yeûk kè p'aaù-taân*.

M: Laū-taân*-p'aaù t'ūng pik-kik-p'aaù yūng kè taân*-yeûk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Laū-taân*-p'aaù t'ūng pik-kik-p'aaù yūng kè taân*-yeûk haî pìn-chong-yeûk kè p'aaù-taân*.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into what two kinds can infantry weapons be divided?

Answer: The infantry weapons can be divided into two kinds, small arms and heavy weapons.

Q: What are small arms?

A: Small arms are weapons which can be carried by individuals.

Q: What do small arms include?

A: Small arms include pistols, carbines, rifles, light machine guns, bayonets, hand-grenades, rifle grenades, etc.

Q: What do heavy weapons include?

A: Heavy weapons include heavy machine guns, bazookas, recoilless rifles, mortars, infantry howitzers, antitank guns, etc.

Q: What is the difference between "ts'eung" and "p'aaû"?

A: According to Chinese weapons, those with calibers which do not exceed 10 mm are "ts'eung"; those larger than 10 mm are "p'aaû".

Q: What is the ammunition for "ts'eung"?

A: Cartridges are the ammunition for "ts'eung".

Q: What is the ammunition for "p'aaû"?

A: Shells are the ammunition for "p'aaû".

Q: How many parts are there in a cartridge?

A: There are three in a cartridge.

Q: What are the three parts in a cartridge called?

A: First is the bullet, second is the shell and primer, and third is the propellant.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What is the ammunition used in the infantry antitank gun?

A: The ammunitions for infantry antitank gun are shells of fixed charge.

Q: What are the ammunitions for howitzer and mortar?

A: The ammunitions for howitzer and mortar are shells of zoned charge.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Although you have a rifle, you have no ammunition.
2. Do you consider a rifle grenade a modern weapon?
3. What kind of ammunition do you use? Fixed charge or zoned charge?
4. A cartridge is made up of the bullet, the shell and primer and the charge.
5. When we were at the front, each of us had two or three hand grenades.
6. Antitank guns are very powerful.
7. Mortar shells do not fit howitzers or recoilless rifles.
8. Carbines are easy to carry and are useful.
9. Rocket launchers are not small arms.
10. The caliber of this cannon is more than 30 mm.
11. Flat trajectory cannons are anti-tank weapons.
12. I think a single person will be able to handle a heavy weapon in the future.
13. Bayonets are useful weapons especially in hand to hand combat.
14. Some cartridges have no propellant.
15. Pistols may be small, but they are deadly weapons.
16. Save all your ammunitions. You will need them later.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	chong-yeûk	propellant, charge
2.	fôh-tsìn p'aaù, fôh-tsìn faàt-shê-heì	rocket launcher, bazooka
3.	haú-kìng	caliber
4.	hing ping-heì	(light weapon), small arms
5.	kung-leì	mm
6.	kw'aì-taaì	to carry, bring
7.	laū-taân*-p'aaù	howitzer
8.	luì-koón	primer
9.	mă-ts'eung	carbine
10.	mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù, (or "fei-ooì-t'uì- shik pô-ts'eung)	recoilless rifle
11.	pik-kik-p'aaù-taân*	mortar shell
12.	pìn-chong-yeûk	zoned charge
13.	p'ìng-shê-p'aaù	flat trajectory cannon, (antitank gun)
14.	shaú-laū-taân*	hand grenade
15.	shaú-ts'eung	pistol, revolver
16.	taân-hòk	cartridge case, shell
17.	taân-t'aū	bullet, projectile
18.	taân-yeûk	ammunition
19.	tîng-chong-yeûk	fixed charge
20.	ts'eung-laū-taân*	rifle grenade cartridge

READING MATERIAL

1335

刺 ts'ì: to prick; to stab; to dig into; a thorn.

刺傷 ts'ì shung: to wound with a pointed weapon

行刺 hāng-ts'ì: to assassinate.

1229

斜 ts'é, ts'ā: oblique; slant; uneven.

斜紋 ts'ā màn: twilled.

斜角 ts'é kòk: oblique angle.

[illegible]

脫 t'uēt: to strip; to remove; to escape; to avoid.

脫帽 t'uēt mò: to lift or remove the hat.

脫離 t'uēt lèi: to depart; to disassociate with.

脫險 t'uēt him: out of danger.

刺 斜 脫

509

姑 koo: [illegible] father's sister, husband's sister.

姑娘 koo-nëung: miss; young lady; a nun (Catholic)

師姑 sz-koo: a nun

姑念 koo-nìm: indulgent towards.

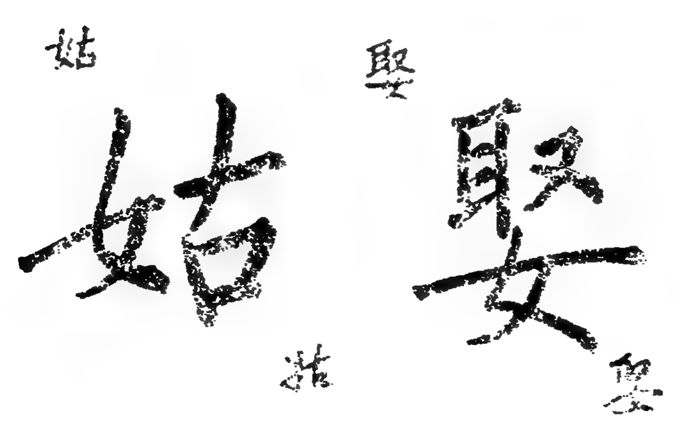
姑母 koo-mō: paternal aunt.

1313

娶 ts'uí: to take a wife, to marry a girl.

娶親 ts'uí [illegible]: to take a wife.

娶妾 ts'uí ts'ìp: to take a concubine



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

828

貧 p'ân: poor; impoverished.

貧窮 p'ân-k'ûng: indigent; poor.

貧乏 p'ân-fât: destitute.

479

稿 kó: rough draft· printer's copy; proof; stalks of grain.

原稿 uēn kó. original copy.

草稿 ts'ó-kó: a rough draft.

起稿 hei kó: to draw up a rough draft.

980

示 shî: to make known; an edict.

訓示 fàn-shî: to instruct, an order.

示威運動 shî-wai wân-tûng: public demonstration.

貧 稿 示

貧 稿 示

贫 稾 稿 示

19

揷 ch'aàp: to insert, drive into

揷嘴 ch'aàp-tsui: interrupt in talking.

1440

也 yă: also; a particle

也曾 yă-ts'āng: already.

揷 也

揷 也

插 揷 也

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

步兵兵器可分為輕兵器與重兵器兩種. 輕兵器重量較輕,個人可以 kw'aI-帶. 其種類有手槍,馬槍,步槍,輕機關槍,刺刀,手 lan-彈,同槍 lan-彈等等. 重兵器有重機關槍,火-tsIn 砲,無座力砲,迫擊砲,步兵 lan 彈砲,平射砲等等.

槍之彈藥稱為子彈,砲之彈藥則稱砲彈. 每一子彈內分三部分,即係彈頭,彈 hŏk 與雷管,以及裝藥是也.

步兵平射砲所用彈藥,為定裝藥之砲彈; lan-彈砲與迫擊砲所用者,則為變裝藥之砲彈.

LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

斜

Character Number 1229
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 68
斗

插

Character Number 19
Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 64
扌, 手

娶

Character Number 1313
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 38
女

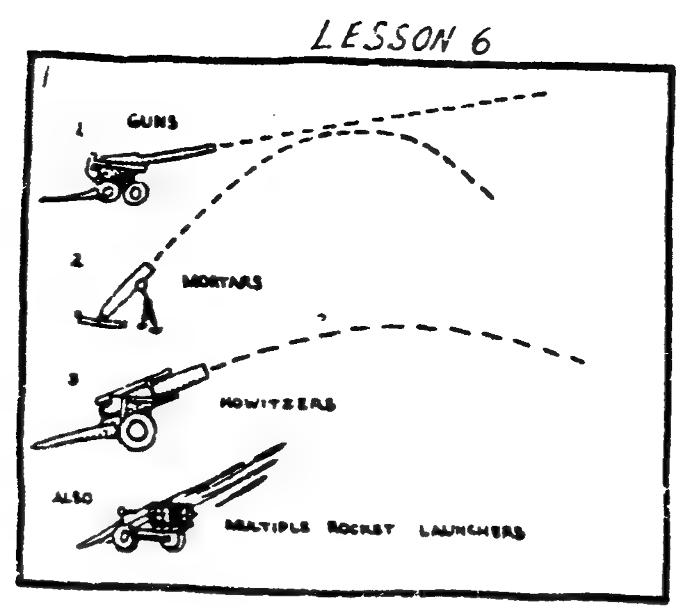
姑

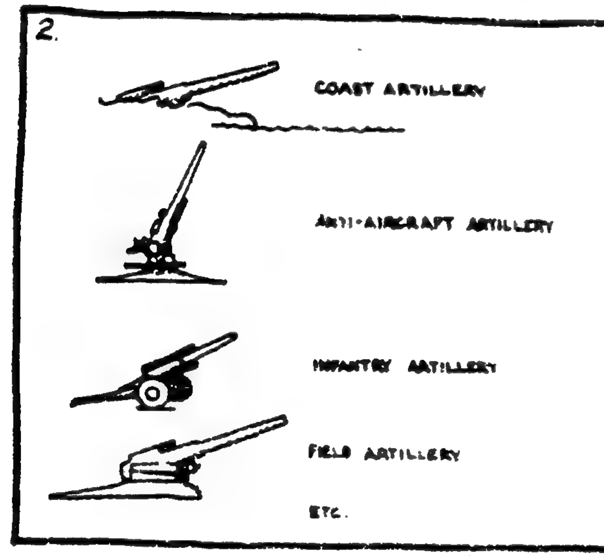
Character Number 509
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 38
女

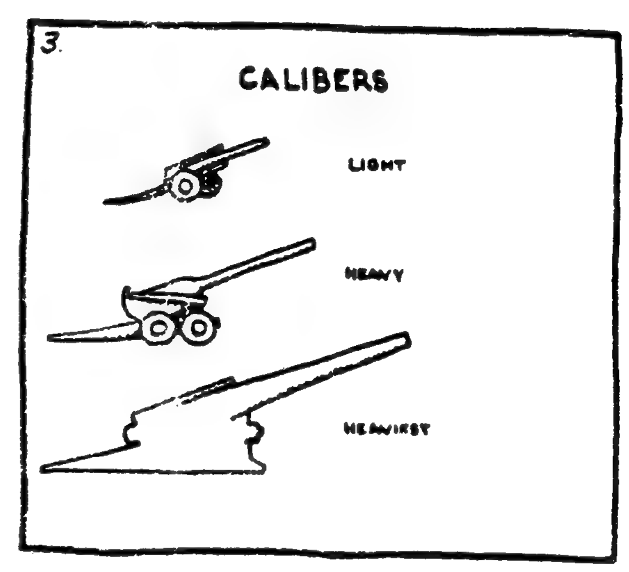
貧

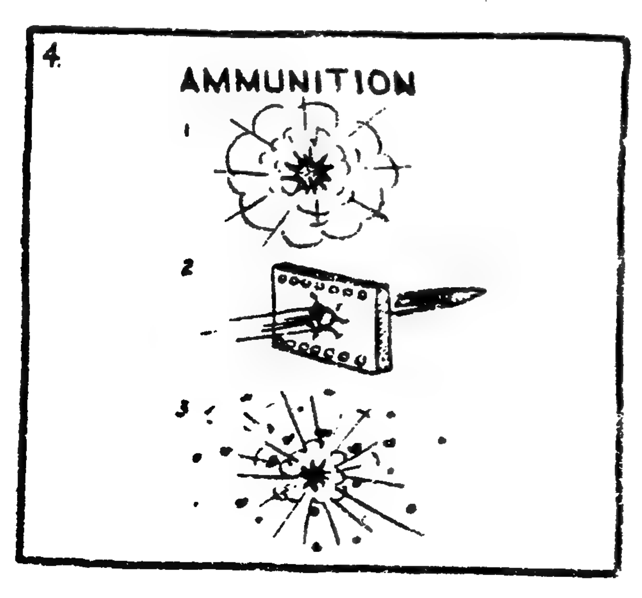
Character Number 828
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 154
貝

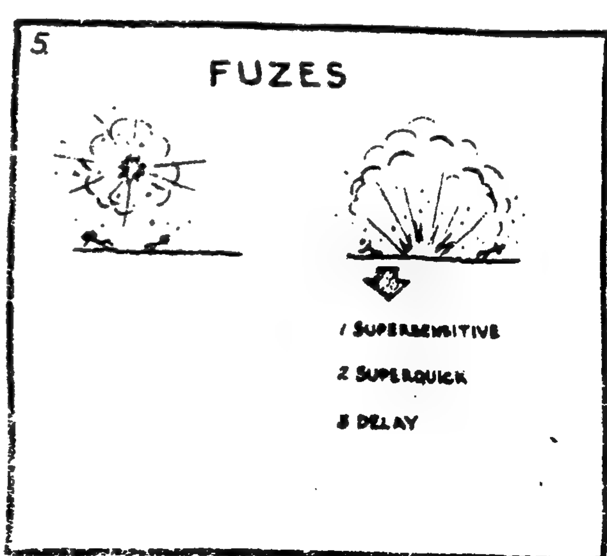
LESSON 6


1
1 GUNS
2 MORTARS
3 HOWITZERS
ALSO
MULTIPLE ROCKET LAUNCHERS


2.
COAST ARTILLERY
ANTI-AIRCRAFT ARTILLERY
INFANTRY ARTILLERY
FIELD ARTILLERY
ETC.


3.
CALIBERS
LIGHT
HEAVY
HEAVIEST


4.
AMMUNITION
1
2
3


5.
FUZES
1 SUPERSENSITIVE
2 SUPERQUICK
3 DELAY

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kan-kuì taân*-tô, p'aaù-ping kè fóh-heì hóh-ĭ fan-waì keì-toh luî?

Taàp: Kan-kuì taân*-tô, p'aaù-ping kè fóh-heì hóh-ĭ fan-waì saam-luî,

M: P'aaù-ping taî-yat luî kè fóh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-yat luî haî taân-tô p'ìng-shê kè fóh-heì, kiù-tsô ka-nũng-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping taî-ĭ luî kè fóh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-ĭ luî haî taân-tô k'uk-shê kè fóh-heì, kiù-tsô pik-kik-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping taî-saam luî kè fóh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-saam luî haî taân-tô haì p'ìng-shê t'ûng k'uk-shê chung-kaan kè fóh-heì, kiù-tsô laũ-taân*-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping kè fóh-heì ch'uì-chóh ni saam-luî chi-ngoî chûng yaũ mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chûng yaũ tsaâp-ts'uk taân-tô kè fóh-heì, kiù-tsô toh-koón-fóh-tsìn-p'aaù.

M: Kan-kuì yâm-mô, p'aaù-ping kè fóh-heì yaû hóh-ĭ fan-waì mi-yĕ?

T: Kan-kuì yâm-mô, p'aaù-ping kè fóh-heì yaû hóh-ĭ fan-waì iù-ts'oì-p'aaù, ko-shê-p'aaù, pô-ping-p'aaù, t'ûng yĕ-chìn-p'aaù tâng-tâng.

M: Kan-kuì haú-kìng, yĕ-chìn-p'aaù tsoì hóh-ĭ fan-waì keì-toh chúng?

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Kan-kuì haú-kìng, yĕ-chìn-p'aaù hóh-Ì fan-waì hing-p'aaù, ch'ŭng-p'aaù, t'ūng tsuì-ch'ŭng-p'aaù saam chúng.

M: Tsuì p'ó-t'ung kĕ p'aaù-ping taân*-yeûk haì mi-yĕ?

T: Tsuì p'ó-t'ung kĕ p'aaù-ping taân*-yeûk haì laū-taân*, k'ei-ts'ì haì p'òh-kaàp-taân* t'ūng laū-sìn-taân*.

M: Sùn-koón yaŭ keì-toh chúng?

T: Sùn-koón yaŭ leŭng-chúng, tsik-haì hung-chà sùn-koón t'ūng p'ùng-chà sùn-koón.

M: P'ùng-chà sùn-koón yaû hóh-Ì fan-waì keì-toh chúng?

T: P'ùng-chà sùn-koón yaû hóh-Ì fan-waì shùn-faàt, cheûk-faàt t'ūng ìn-k'eì saam-chúng.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question? According to the trajectory, into how many categories can the artillery pieces be grouped?

Answer: According to the trajectory, the artillery pieces can be grouped into three categories.

Q: What is the first category of artillery pieces?

A: The first category is the flat trajectory pieces. They are called guns.

Q: What is the second category of artillery pieces?

A: The second category is the curved trajectory pieces. They are called mortars.

Q: What is the third category of artillery pieces?

A: The third category of pieces are those of which the trajectory are between flat and curved. They are called howitzers.

Q: Besides these three categories, are there any other artillery pieces?

A: There are sheaf fire pieces. They are called multiple rocket launchers.

Q: According to missions, how can the artillery pieces also be grouped?

A: According to their missions, the artillery pieces can also be grouped into coastal artillery, anti-aircraft artillery, infantry artillery, field artillery and others.

Q: According to caliber, into how many catagories can field artillery pieces again be divided?

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: According to caliber, field artillery pieces can be divided into three kinds: the light pieces, the heavy, and the heaviest pieces.

Q: What are the most common artillery ammunitions?

A: The most common artillery ammunitions are high explosive shells, the next are the armor-piercing shells and the shrapnel shells.

Q: How many kinds of fuzes are there?

A: There are two kinds of fuzes, namely, the air burst fuzes, and the impact fuzes.

Q: Into how many kinds can impact fuzes again be divided?

A: There are three kinds of impact fuzes, namely, the supersensitive fuzes, the superquick fuzes and the delay fuzes.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. At this training base there are 10 field artillery pieces and 20 multiple rocket launchers.
2. Are multiple rocket launchers sheaf fire pieces?
3. The trajectory of artillery pieces can be flat or curved.
4. How would you classify field artillery pieces according to calibers?
5. I don't think this fuze is supersensitive.
6. Impact fuzes are different from air burst fuzes.
7. We do not use armor-piercing shell for antiaircraft guns
8. This artillery piece uses high explosive shells.
9. Shrapnel shells are common artillery ammunitions.
10. There are many coastal artillery pieces in this area.
11. If you have any firearms, you have to register them with the police.
12. These delay fuzes are no substitutes for impact fuzes.
13. Can firearms be grouped under different categories?
14. The students can be grouped into two categories.
15. These military personnel are from different branches of the armed service.
16. Even this machine gun is too heavy for one man.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	cheûk-faàt (sùn koón)	superquick (fuze)
2.	fóh-heì	firearm, piece
3.	hung-chà sùn-koón	air burst fuze, time fuze
4.	ìn-k'eì sùn-koón	delay fuze
5.	iù-ts'oì p'aaù	coastal artillery piece
6.	ka-nǜng-p'aaù	gun, any piece with 10 mm or larger caliber
7.	ko-shê-p'aaù	antiaircraft gun
8.	k'ui-fan	to divide, be divided
9.	k'uk-shê-p'aaù	curved trajectory piece
10.	laū-sìn-taân* (laū-saàn-taân*)	shrapnel
11.	laū-taân*	high explosive shell
12.	p'ìng-shê	flat fire, flat trajectory
13.	p'òh-kaàp-taân* (ch'uen-kaàp-taân*)	armor-piercing shell
14.	p'ùng-chà sùn-koón	impact fuze
15.	sùn-faàt (sùn-koón)	supersensitive (fuze)
16.	sùn-koón	fuze
17.	taân-tô	trajectory
18.	toh-koón fóh-tsìn p'aaù	multiple rocket launcher
19.	tsaâp-ch'uk taân-tô	sheaf fire
20.	yĕ-chìn p'aaù	field artillery piece

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

563

腰 iu: loins, waist; kidney; isthmus

腰骨 iu-kwat: backbone

892

旁 p'ōng: at the side; near.

旁人 p'ōng-yān: bystander; looker-on.

旁邊 p'ōng-pīn: at the side; the side.

127

磚 chuen: brick; tile (Cl.kǒn)

青磚 ts'ing-chuen: burnt brick

泥磚 nai-chuen. mud brick

腰 旁 磚

腰 旁 磚

甎 砖

1295

倉 ts'ong: granary; storehouse.

貨倉 fòh-ts'ong: a warehouse.

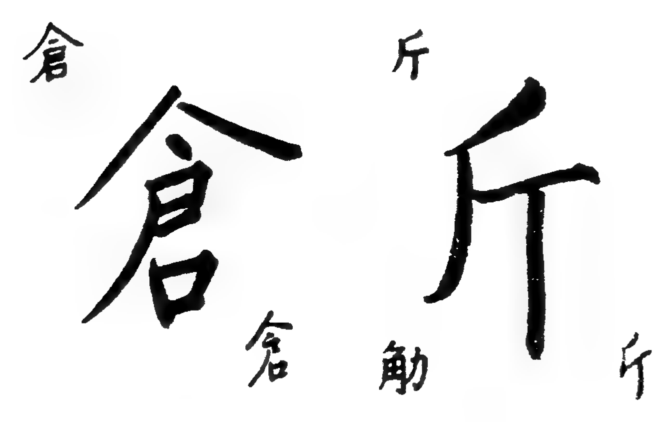
穀倉 kuk ts'ong: granary, barn.

407

斤 kan: a catty, equivalent to 1 1/3 pound; 16 ounces

一斤 yat kan: one catty

斤兩 kan-leúng: the weight of a thing



READING MATERIAL

1296

蒼 ts'ong: azure; the sky.

蒼天 ts'ong-t'in: the blue sky.

蒼蠅 ts'ong-ying: fly; (flies).

902

盤 p'oōn: a tray; vessel; to wind; to examine.

收盤 shau p'oōn: to wind up the business.

地盤 tei-p'oōn: territory; military position.

904

胖 poōn: fat.

胖子 poōn-tsź: fat fellow (Mandarin)

蒼 盤 胖

1277

醋 ts'ò: vinegar.

白醋 paak ts'ò: white vinegar.

黑醋 hak ts'ò: black vinegar.

1283

栽 tsoi. to plant; to set out.

栽花 tsoi fa: to set out flowers.

栽培 tsoi-p'ooi: to cultivate; to assist; to rear.



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

根據彈道，砲兵火器可以區分為三類。彈道平射之火器名為加農砲；彈道曲射之火器名為迫擊砲；至於彈道在平射與曲射間之火器則稱為 lañ- 彈砲。此外，火器為集-ch'uk 彈道者，稱為多管火箭砲。

根據任務，砲兵之火器又可以區分為要 ts'oi 砲，高射砲，步兵砲，同野戰砲等等。

根據口徑，野戰砲再可以區分為，輕砲，重砲，同最重砲三種。

最普通之砲兵彈藥係 lañ- 彈；其次係破甲彈同 lañ-sin 彈。

信管有兩種，即是空炸信管與碰炸信管。碰炸信管又可以分為 sún- 發，着發及延期三種。

WRITING MATERIAL

腰

Character Number 1277 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 13 月，肉

旁

Character Number 1295 Radical Number 70
Stroke Number 10 方

磚

Character Number 127 Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 16 石

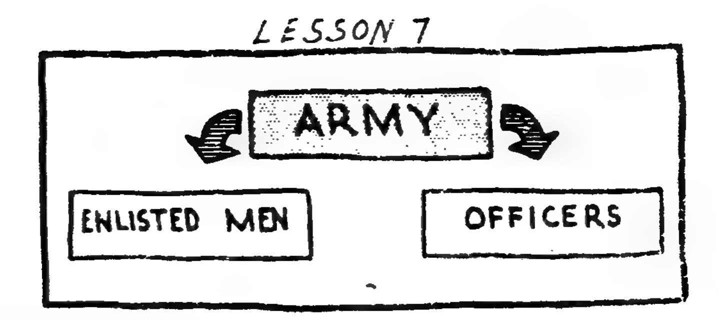
倉

Character Number 892 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 人

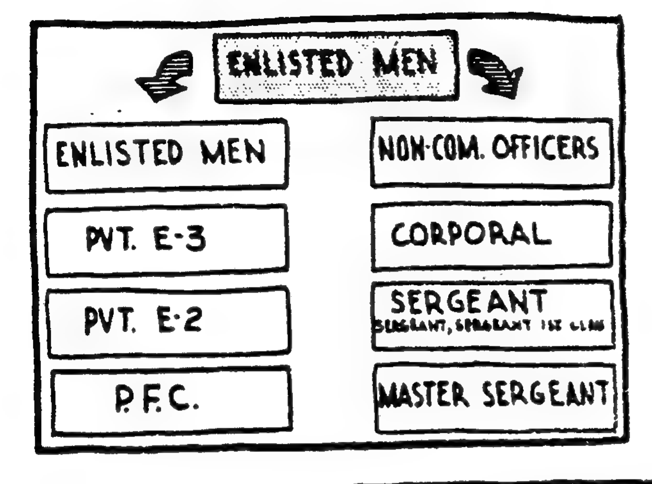
醋

Character Number 363 Radical Number 164
Stroke Number 15 酉

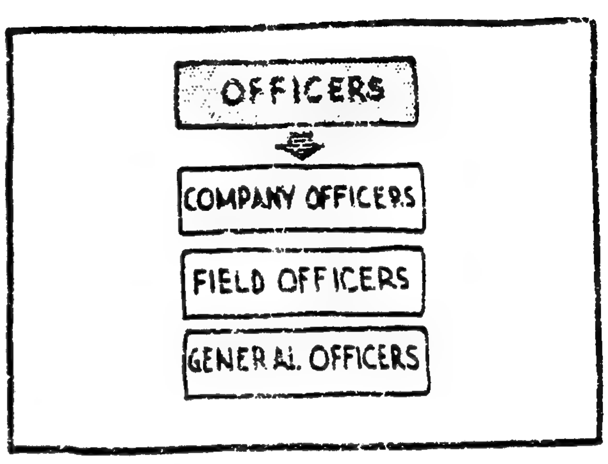
LESSON 7



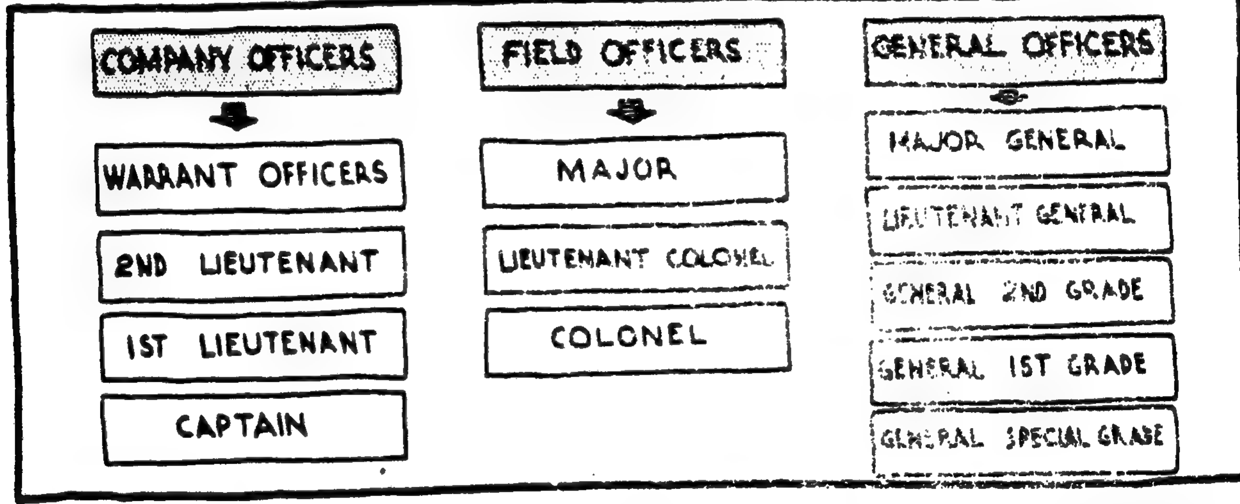
ARMY
ENLISTED MEN
OFFICERS



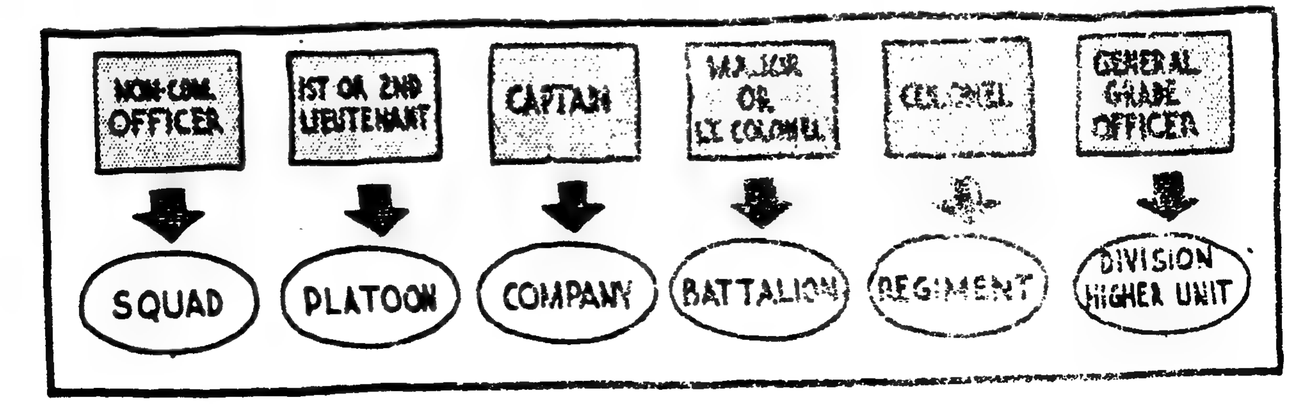
ENLISTED MEN
ENLISTED MEN
PVT. E-3
PVT. E-2
P.F.C.
NON-COM. OFFICERS
CORPORAL
SERGEANT
MASTER SERGEANT



OFFICERS
COMPANY OFFICERS
FIELD OFFICERS
GENERAL OFFICERS



COMPANY OFFICERS
WARRANT OFFICERS
2ND LIEUTENANT
1ST LIEUTENANT
CAPTAIN
FIELD OFFICERS
MAJOR
LIEUTENANT COLONEL
COLONEL
GENERAL OFFICERS
MAJOR GENERAL
GENERAL 2ND GRADE
GENERAL 1ST GRADE
GENERAL SPECIAL GRADE



NON-COM. OFFICER
1ST OR 2ND LIEUTENANT
CAPTAIN
MAJOR OR LT. COLONEL
GENERAL GRADE OFFICER
SQUAD
PLATOON
COMPANY
BATTALION
DIVISION HIGHER UNIT

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Lûk-kwan kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh luî ne?

Taàp: Lûk-kwan kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi sž-ping t'ŭng kwan-koon leŭng luî.

M: Sž-ping kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh k'ap ne?

T: Sž-ping kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi sž-ping t'ŭng kwan-sž leŭng k'ap. Sž-ping fan-hoi î-tắng-ping, yat-tắng-ping, sheûng-tắng-ping saam k'ap. Kwan-sž fan-hoi hâ-sž, chung-sž, sheûng-sž saam k'ap.

M: Kwan-koon kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh k'ap ne?

T: Kwan-koon kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi waî-koon, kaaù-koon, tseùng-koon, saam k'ap. Waî-koon fan-hoi chŭm-waî, shiù-waî, chung-waî, sheûng-waî, seî k'ap. Kaaù-koon fan-hoi shiu-kaaù, chung-kaaù, sheûng-kaaù, saam k'ap. Tseùng-koon fan-hoi shiù-tseùng, chung-tseùng, î-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, yat-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, tắk-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, nğ k'ap.

M: Yat-kòh paan haî yaŭ pin kòh chî-fai?

T: Yat-kòh paan haî yaŭ yat-kòh kwan-sž chî-fai.

M: Yat-kòh p'aaî haî yaŭ pin kòh chî-fai?

T: Yat-kòh p'aaî haî yaŭ yat-kòh shiù-waî waăk chung-waî chî-fai.

M: Yat-kòh lìn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaŭ mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: Yat-kòh lìn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaŭ yat-kòh sheûng-waî chî-fai.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL DIALOGUE

M: **Yat-kôh yîng-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yě kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?**

T: **Yat-kôh yîng-k'ap pô-tuî*** haî yaū yat-kôh shiù-kaaù waâk chung-kaaù chî-fai.

M: **Yat-kôh t'uēn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yě** kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: **Yat-kôh t'uēn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kôh** sheûng-kaaù chî-fai.

M: **Sz ĭ-sheûng pô-tuî* haî yaū** mi-yě **kaai-k'ap kè** kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: **Sz Ī-sheûng pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kôh** tseùng-koon chî-fai.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into how many categories are the ranks of the Army divided?

Answer: The ranks of the Army are divided into two categories, namely, enlisted men and officers.

Q: Into how many grades are the ranks of the enlisted men divided?

A: The ranks of the enlisted men are divided into two grades, namely, enlisted men and non-commissioned officers. Enlisted men are divided into three grades, namely, private third class, private second class, and private first class. Non-commissioned officers are divided into three grades, namely, corporal, sergeant (sergeant, sergeant first class), and master sergeant.

Q: Into how many grades are the ranks of the officers divided?

A: The ranks of the officers are divided into three grades, namely, company officers (wai-koon), field officers (kaaù-koon), and general officers (cheùng-koon). Company officers are divided into four grades, namely, warrant officer, second lieutenant, first lieutenant, and captain. Field officers are divided into three grades, namely, major, lieutenant colonel, and colonel. General officers are divided into five grades, namely, major general, lieutenant general, general (second grade), general (first grade), and general (special grade).

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: By whom is a squad commanded?

A. A squad is commanded by a non-commissioned officer.

Q: By whom is a platoon commanded?

A: A platoon is commanded by a second lieutenant or a first lieutenant.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a company level unit commanded?

A: A company level unit is commanded by a captain.

Q: By an officer of what rank if a battalion level unit commanded?

A: A battalion level unit is commanded by a major or a lieutenant colonel.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a regimental level unit commanded?

A: A regimental level unit is commanded by a colonel.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a division or higher unit commanded?

A: A division or higher unit is commanded by a general grade officer.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I can only give you my name, rank and service number.
2. Officers went through a great deal more training than soldiers.
3. Two second lieutenants are assigned to the task.
4. Do you think an enlisted man can become a general officer?
5. Officers of this battalion are all young and able.
6. This is Corporal Lee. May I speak to Sgt Wong please?
7. You may not like it this way, but it is an order.
8. My student are all field officers, one colonel, two lieutenant colonels and five majors.
9. General White is the commanding officer of this post.
10. General Brown and his wife will attend our graduation exercise.
11. Where have you been, Private Chan? I have been looking for you all morning.
12. Officers and enlisted men will eat the same thing at the front.
13. Will you please ask Pfc Chang to come in?
14. You ought to do better than that. You are not a recruit anymore.
15. Pvt Chow and Pvt Mark are two of the best soldiers in this outfit.
16. Would you consider a corporal an NCO?

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1. **î-k'ap sheûng-tseùng** general (second grade)
2. **kaai-k'ap** rank
3. **kwan-sẑ** noncommissioned officer
4. **lîn-k'ap pô-tuî*** company level unit
5. **tâk-k'ap sheûng-tseùng** general (special grade)
6. **tseùng-koon** general officer
7. **waì-koon** company officer
8. **yat-k'ap sheûng-tseùng** general (first grade)

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

576

階 kaai: step; a rank stairs. a class

階級 kaai-k'ap: step; an official grade class

1251

賤 tsîn: low: mean; ignoble.

賤相 tsîn seùng: low type of countenance; ignoble appearance

貧賤 p'ân-tsîn: poor and mean.

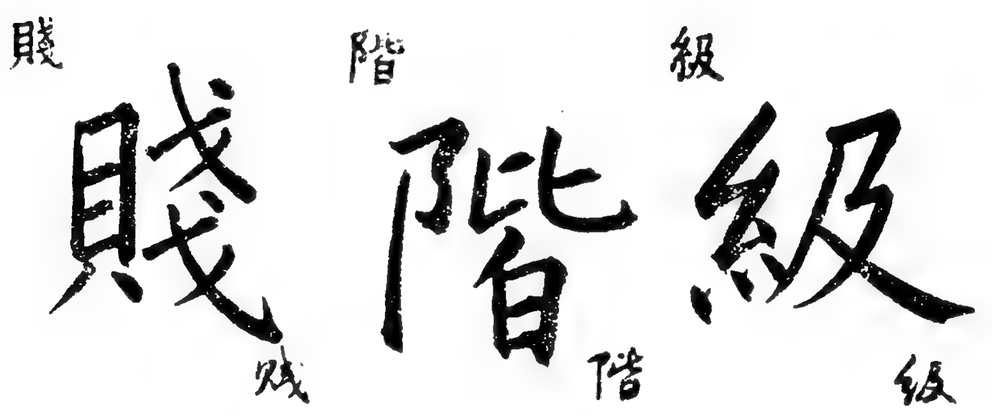
418

級 k'ap: steps(stairs etc.); grades of rank.

階級 kaai-k'ap: rank

初級 ch'oh k'ap: elementary

石級 shêk-k'ap: stone steps.



1085

貪 t'aam: covetous; greedy.

貪心 t'aam-sam: covetous

貪錢 t'aam ts'în: avaricious.

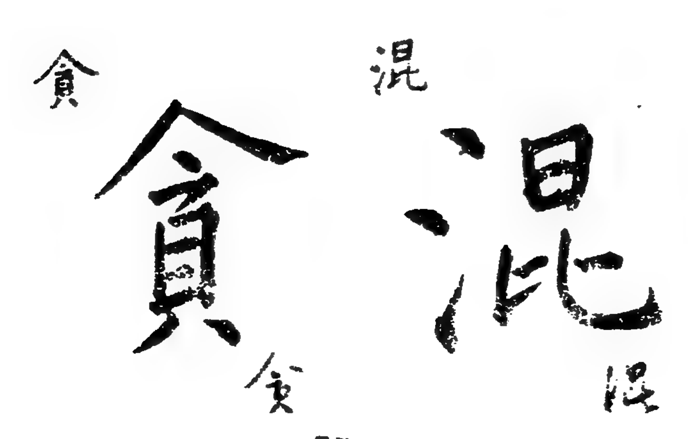
貪利 t'aam lei: greedy for gain.

1428

混 wân: confused; mixed; disorderly; to confound; to mix.

混亂 wân-luên: in disorder; in confusion.

混合 wân-nôp: mixture.



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1064

率 sut, lut: to lead; to command; in general; all.

率領 sut-lǐng: to lead.

率直 sut-chīk: without mincing matters.

統率 túng-sut: to lead.

速率 ts'uk-lŭt: rate of speed; velocity

889

婆 p'ŏh: old woman; mother; dame.

老婆 lŏ-p'ŏh: wife.

公婆 kung p'ŏh: husband and wife.

1387

元 uŭn: first; original; dollar.

紀元前 keí-uŭn ts'ĭn: before Christ; B.C.

元首 uŭn-shaú: the head; leader; ruler.

元帥 uŭn-shuì: commander-in-chief; generalissimo.

一元 yat uŭn: one dollar

率 婆 元

率 婆 元

率 婆 元

[illegible]

吵 ch'aáu: clamor, uproar

吵鬧 ch'aáu-naaû: to brawl

吵耳 ch'aáu-ĭ: annoying, noise

1381

寃 uen: to oppress; to wrong; act of injustice.

寃枉 uen-wóng: a wrong; injustice.

寃仇 uen ch'aū: a grudge

吵 寃

吵 寃

吵 寃 寃

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

陸軍階級之中，有軍官，士兵兩大類。士兵階級又分為兵與士兩級。兵有二等兵，一等兵，上等兵三級。士有下士，中士，上士三級。

軍官階級有wai官，校官同將官三類。wai官分為准wai，少wai，中wai，上wai四級。校官分為少校，中校，上校三級。將官分為少將，中將，二級上將，一級上將，特級上將五級。

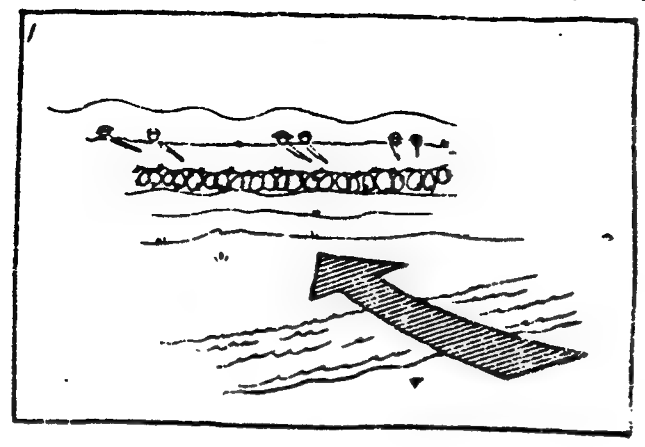
一個班係由一個軍士指揮。一個排係由一個少wai或中wai指揮。一個連級部隊係由上尉指揮。一個營級部隊係由少校或中校指揮。一個團級部隊係由上校指揮。師以上之部隊則由一將官統率。

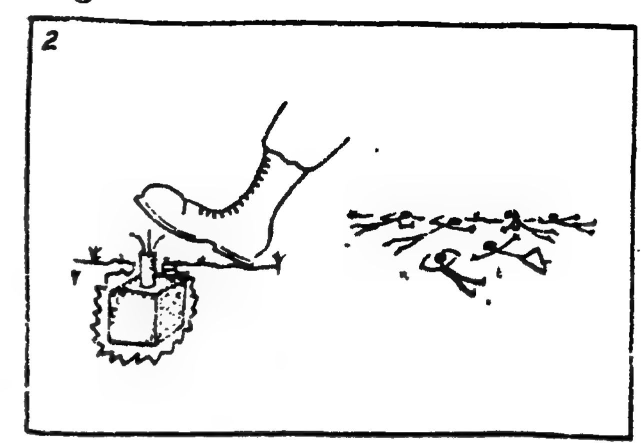
LESSON 7

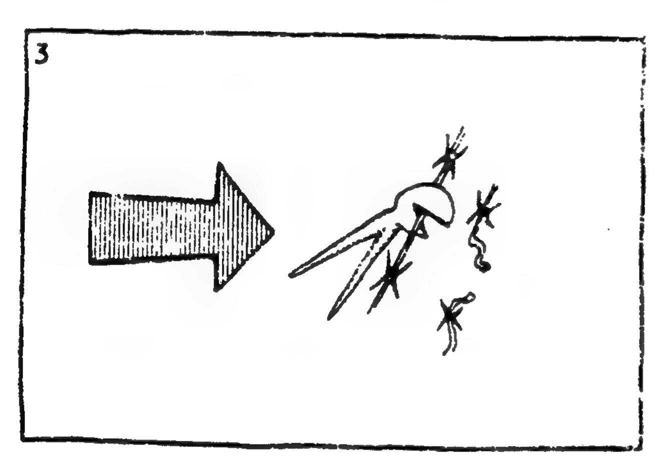
WRITING MATERIAL

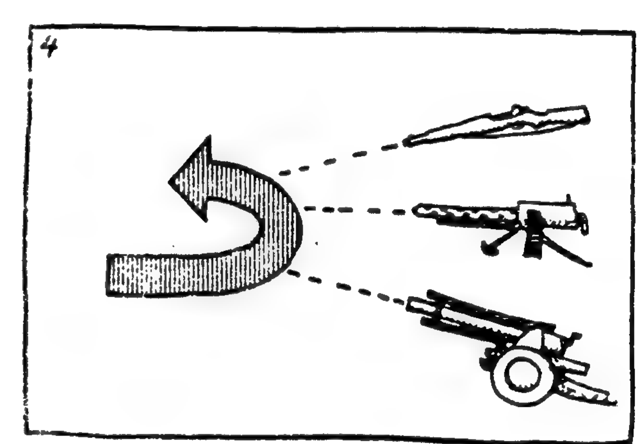
Character	Details
賤	Character Number 1251 / Stroke Number 15 / Radical Number 154 貝
階	Character Number 376 / Stroke Number 11 / Radical Number 170 阝, 阜
級	Character Number 418 / Stroke Number 10 / Radical Number 120 糸, 糸
貪	Character Number 1085 / Stroke Number 11 / Radical Number 154 貝
混	Character Number 1428 / Stroke Number 11 / Radical Number 85 氵, 水

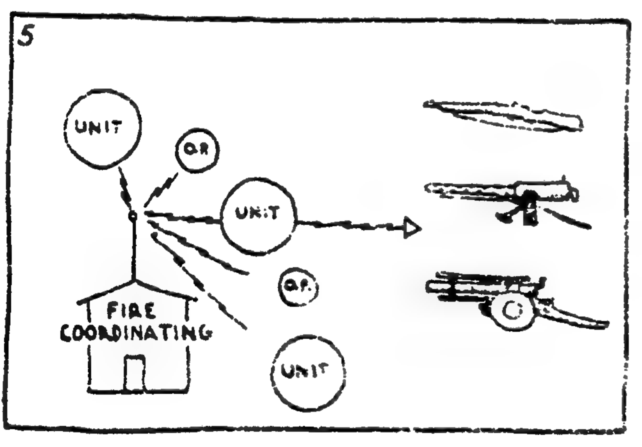
LESSON 8

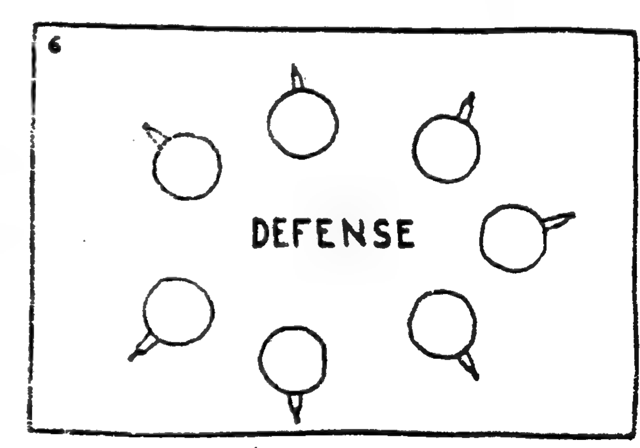












LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: P'ó-t'ung kè chìn-shût fan-hoi keì-toh chúng à?

Taàp: P'ó-t'ung kè chìn-shût fan-hoi kung-kik t'ũng fõng-uê leũng chúng.

M: Ī-ka tîk-yān kaì-waâk-kân mi-yě à?

T: Ī-ka tîk-yān kaì-waâk-kân kung-kik. K'uĭ-teî seúng yaũ chìng-mîn kung-kik, p'aaì yat-kôh ka-k'eũng p'aaì kung-kik ngŏh kwan kè chân-teî.

M: Tîk-yān kung-kik kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* fõng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî à?

T: Tîk-yān kung-kik kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî yûng teî-luì t'ũng t'ìt-sz-mõng tâng-tâng kè fõng-uê kung-sz fõng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî.

M: Ts'ìn-maãn ngŏh-teî maaì kè shaàt-sheung teî-luì lìng tîk-yān sheung-mõng hó ch'ũng chi-haû, tîk-yān tìm-yeûng* à?

T: Ts'ìn-maãn ngŏh-teî maaì kè shaàt-sheung teî-luì lìng tîk-yān sheung-mõng hó ch'ũng, tîk-yān kaì-tsûk kung-kik, ì-ch'è tsìn t'uẽn ngŏh-teî kè t'ìt-sz-mõng.

M: Tîk-yān kaì-tsûk kung-kik t'ũng tsìn t'uẽn ngŏh-teî kè t'ìt-sz-mõng, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* fõng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî à?

T: Ngŏh-teî yûng kei-kwaan ts'eung, pô-ts'eung, t'ũng p'aaù-ping kè luẽn-hôp fóh-lìk kik-t'uì tîk-yān. Tîk-yān sheung-mõng hó ch'ũng. K'uĭ-teî kè kung-kik shat-paaî-chôh.

M: Tîk-yān kè kung-kik shat-paaî chi-haû, ngŏh kwan tìm-yeûng* à?

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Tîk-yān kè kung-kik shat-paaî chi-haû, ngŏh kwan ch'ìt-lâp kòk pô-tuî* kè t'ùng-yat ts'ìn-shaaì.

M: T'uēn kè fòh-lîk-hîp-t iû-shòh foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

T: T'uēn kè fòh-lîk-hîp-t iû-shòh foô-chaàk chì-shî shê-kik kaì-waâk.

M: Ni kòh shê-kik kaì-waâk haî tìm-yeûng* kà?

T: Ni kòh shê-kik kaì-waâk chì-shî kòk chúng ping-heì shê-kik kè shī-kaan t'ùng teì-tìm.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yìng yaû ch'ìt-lâp yat kòh tìm-yeûng* kè chân-teî à?

T: Ngôh-teî kè yìng yaû ch'ìt-lâp yat kòh ts'uēn-mìn fŏng-uê kè chân-teî.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into how many kinds can the common tactics be divided?

Answer: The common tactics can be divided into two kinds, attack and defense.

Q: What is the enemy planning now?

A: The enemy is planning to attack. They want to attack from the frontal position. They are sending a reinforced platoon to attack our position.

Q: When the enemy attacks, how do we defend our position?

A: When the enemy attacks, we use fortifications like mines, wire entanglements, etc., to defend our position.

Q: What did the enemy do after they suffered heavy casualties in the anti-personnel mine field we laid the night before last?

A: The anti-personnel mines we laid the night before last caused the enemy heavy casualties. The enemy continued the attack, and cut off our wire entanglements.

Q: The enemy continued the attack and cut off our wire entanglements. How did we defend our position?

A: Our combined fire power of machine guns, rifles, and artillery beat off the enemy. The enemy suffered heavy casualties. Their attack failed.

Q: After the enemy's attack failed, what did our troops do?

A: After the enemy's attack failed, we set up a general out-post between the different units.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: For what is the regimental fire coordinating center responsible?

A: The regimental fire coordinating center is responsible for giving instructions for the fire plan.

Q: What is this fire plan?

A: This fire plan shows the time and place for the firing of various weapons.

Q: What other position did our battalion establish?

A: Our battalion also established an all-round defense position.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I am sorry sir, I don't think I have enough men to set up a good defense.
2. May I congratulate you for the good work you have done.
3. Fortunately we have no casualties,but it was a dangerous task.
4. The enemy failed to set up a defensive position last night.
5. In case of frontal attack, we have to use the reserves.
6. The fire plan is excellent.
7. Did you order your men to lay antipersonnel mines along the roads?
8. This is the place for river-crossing, remember it.
9. Our engineers sheared the wire entanglements along the river bank.
10. I received instructions from the headquarters yesterday.
11. The combined fire power of the two companies repulsed the enemy's frontal attack.
12. We have anti-personnel mines at the front and a reinforced platoon at the rear.
13. The fire plan failed and as a last resort, we had to retreat.
14. Who is the officer in charge of the fire coordinating center?
15. Your unit will set up wire entanglements along the beach and at every intersection on these streets.
16. You have to give them daily instructions according to the schedule.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	chân-teî	position
2.	chî-shî	to give instruction, show; instruction
3.	chìng-mîn kung-kik	frontal attack
4.	ch'ìt-lâp	to set up
5.	fóh-lîk hìp-tiû-shóh	fire coordinating center
6.	ka-k'ēung p'aaì	reinforced platoon
7.	kik-t'uì	to repulse, beat off
8.	luēn-hôp fóh-lîk	combined fire power
9.	maaì	to lay (mine)
10.	shaàt-sheung teî-luì	antipersonnel mine
11.	shat-paaî	to fail; failure
12.	shê-kik kaì-waâk	fire plan
13.	sheung-mōng	casualty (wounded and dead)
14.	teî-tîm	place
15.	t'ìt-sz-mŏng	wire entanglements
16.	tô hōh	to cross river; river crossing
17.	tsîn t'uĕn	to shear, cut
18.	ts'uēn-mîn fōng-uê	all-round defense
19.	t'úng-yat ts'ìn-shaaù	general outpost
20.	p'ó-t'ung chìn-chaang	conventional war
21.	hât-haaî	nuclear weapon

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

625

爐 lō: stove; fire-place; furnace; grate.

火爐 fóh-lō: a stove.

風爐 fung-lō: small earthern stove.

香爐 heung-lō: incense burner.

1354

毒 tûk: poison; virus; to hate.

毒藥 tûk yeûk: poison.

中毒 chùng tûk: to take poison by accident; poisoned.

服毒 fûk tûk: to take poison.

毒打 tûk tá: a cruel beating.

1774

粗 ts'o: coarse; rough; rude; careless.

粗口 ts'o-haú: obscene language.

粗俗 ts'o-tsûk: vulgar; uncouth.

爐 炉 毒 粗

爐 毒 粗

炉 毒 粗

1179

屠 t'ō: a butcher; to slaughter.

屠場 t'ō-ch'eúng: slaughter house; abatoir.

屠殺 t'ō-shaàt: slaughter; to slaughter.

1174

逃 t'ō: to flee; to escape; to abscond.

逃走 t'ō-tsaú: to flee.

逃犯 t'ō faân: escaped criminal.

逃兵 t'ō ping: deserter.

屠 逃

屠 逃

屠 逃

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

950

什 shâp: sundry miscellaneous.

什物 shâp-mât: sundries, miscellaneous articles.

800

吧 pa: angry quarreling.

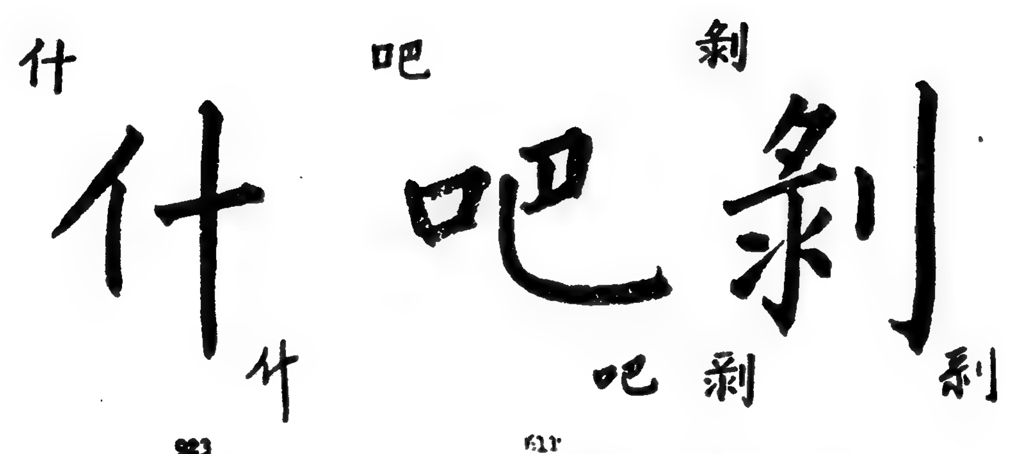
吧嘢 pa-pai: clamor.

709

剝 mok: to flay; to peel; to lay bare.

剝皮 mok p'eI: to skin; to reel; to fleece.

剝削 mok-seük: to oppress; to squeeze the people.



923

削 seük: to cut; to cut off; to scrape

刮削 kwaât-seük: to scrape.

削平 seük p'ëng: to raze to the ground.

611

臉 lYm: face; reputation.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

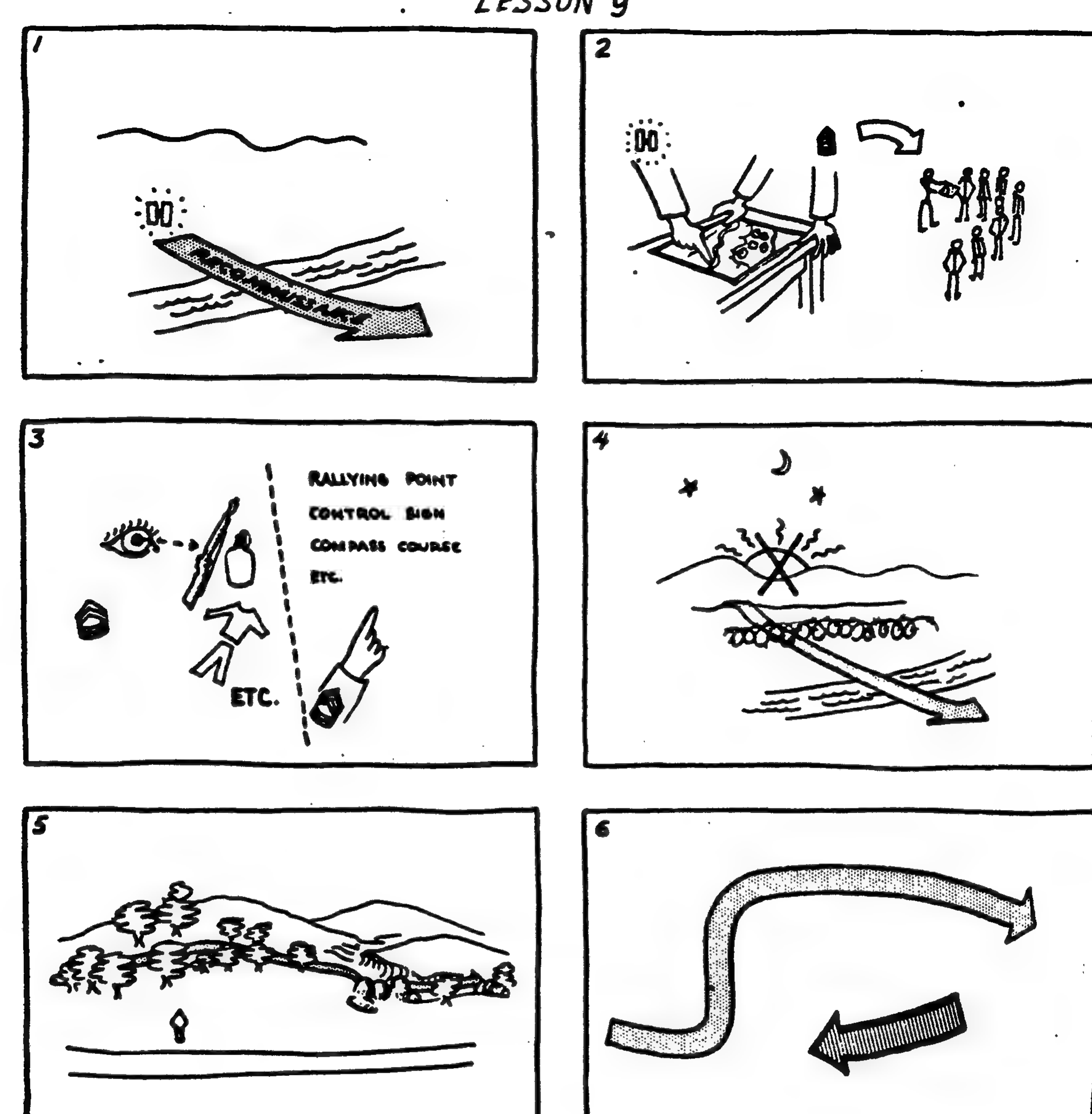
敵人想作正面攻擊,派一個加强排渡河攻擊我軍陣地.此屬普通戰爭性質,雙方不用毒氣,化學兵器或 hât 械.

我方所埋之殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡不少但像敵人之力量尚未削弱,仍繼續攻擊.且剪斷我方之鐵絲 mŏng ,但我軍之機關槍,步槍,同砲兵,聯合集中火力擊退敵人,敵人被屠殺者極眾,殘餘紛紛逃生.

敵人攻擊失敗之後我軍設立各部隊之統一前 shaan 團部之火力協調所指示射擊計劃.此計劃即是指示各種兵器之射擊時間與地點.我方營部,又設立一個全面防禦陣地.

Character	Details
爐	Character Number 625 Stroke Number 20 Radical Number 86
毒	Character Number 1354 Stroke Number 9 Radical Number 80 毋
粗	Character Number 1274 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 119 米
屠	Character Number 1179 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 44 尸
逃	Character Number 1174 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 162 辶 · 辵

LESSON 9



LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ch'ik-haû tuî* kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yě?

Taâp: Ch'ik-haû tuî* kè chuê-ià yâm-mô haî saû-shòk tîk kwan kè chân-teî, shau-tsaâp ts'îng-pò iù-tîm, ching-ch'aât tîk kwan kè tiû-tûng, wân-shue t'ûng pô-k'ap tâng-tâng.

M: Ī-ka ngŏh kwan kè yat-kòh lîn-cheûng p'aaî-ch'ut yat tuî ch'ik-haû huî pin shuè, k'uî-teî taam-yâm pin chûng yâm-mô à?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè yat-kòh lîn-cheûng p'aaî-ch'ut yat tuî ch'ik-haû tô hŏh saû-shòk tîk kwan chân-teî, shau-tsaâp ts'îng-pò iù-tîm.

M: Lîn-cheûng haî chî-fai-shŏh tuî ni tuî ch'ik-haû hâ mi-yě mîng-lîng à?

T: Lîn-cheûng haî chî-fai-shŏh tuî ni tuî ch'ik-haû hâ kaân-iù mîng-lîng, lîn-cheûng yaû yûng teî-t'ŏ kè tsôh-piu chî-shî k'uî-teî tîm-yeûng* huî k'uî-teî kè mûk-tik-teî.

M: Ch'ik-haû-tuî-cheûng tak-tô* mîng-lîng chi-haû, k'uî tsaû tîm-yeûng* à?

T: Ch'ik-haû-tuî-cheûng tak-tô* mîng-lîng chi-haû, k'uî tuî pô-hâ hâ kaân-iù mîng-lîng, kîm-ch'a pô-hâ kè i-fûk t'ûng chong-kuî, k'uî yaû chî-shî ch'ik-haû tuî* kè tsaâp-hôp teî-tîm, lîn-lòk foŏ-hô, t'ûng mûk-tik-teî kè ts'ž-cham lô-sîn tâng tâng.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî* keî shî ch'ut-faât à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî* haî taî-î yât t'in-kwong chi-ts'în ch'ut-faât, yan-waî haî t'in-hak kè snî-haû ch'ut-faât, m-yûng-î peî tîk-yān t'aî-kin.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî ch'ut-faàt kè shì-haû, k'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwòh chân-teî ts'ìn-pìn kè mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwòh chân-teî ts'ìn-pìn kè cheùng-ngoî-mât.

M: K'uĭ-teî leî-yûng mi-yĕ kè che-paì waî-chì ts'ìn-tsùn à?

T: K'uĭ-teî leî-yûng che-paì waî-chì ts'ìn-tsùn, hó-ts'ž shuê-mûk, nap-teî, tàng-tàng, k'uĭ-teì peî-mĭn t'ūng tìk-yān tsìp-chuk.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is the main mission of the patrol?

Answer: The main mission of the patrol is to reconnoiter the enemy positions, to collect the essential elements of information, to reconnoiter the enemy's movements, transportation, and supplies.

Q: To where is the patrol being sent now by one of our company commanders? What mission has the patrol undertaken?

A: One of our company commanders sent a patrol to cross the river to reconnoiter the enemy positions and to collect the essential elements of information.

Q: What order did the company commander give to this patrol at the command post?

A: At the command post the company commander briefed the patrol. The company commander also used map coordinates to point out to them how to reach their destination.

Q: After the patrol leader received the order, what did he do?

A: After the patrol leader received the order, he briefed his subordinates, inspected his subordinates' clothing and equipment. He also pointed out the patrol's rallying point, control sign, and the compass course to the destination, etc.

Q: When did the patrol start?

A: The patrol started before dawn on the following day. By starting off in the dark, it was not easy to be seen by the enemy.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: When they started through what did they pass in front of the postion?

A: They passed through the obstacles in front of the position.

Q: What defiladed positions did they utilize to advance?

A: They utilized those defiladed positions like trees, draws, etc. , to advance. They avoided gaining contact with the enemy.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. If you have a compass and a map, you will be able to find the location.
2. These map coordinates are applicable to our special maps.
3. Your superior tried to contact you over the phone last night.
4. Elements of the 1st Regiment of the 2nd Armored Division were ordered by the commanding officer to reinforce the British units.
5. Woods and draws are excellent concealments for troop movements.
6. Our unit is specialized in reconnaissance activities.
7. He is collecting essential elements of information.
8. The commander orders his subordinates to report all important information to him.
9. They tried to avoid the enemy's patrol by detouring from the main route.
10. The plane will take off exactly at 0600 tomorrow.
11. Be sure to check the equipment of your subordinates before your unit takes off.
12. Our reconnaissance patrols passed through the barriers set up by the enemy.
13. Do you thoroughly understand the order given by Capt Wŏng?
14. When you go out on patrol you should utilize control signs to communicate and keep silent.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Her mission is to get information from our men.

16. Did your boys check all possible defiladed positions?

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	tsaâp-hôp teì-tìm	rallying point
2.	che-paì waî-chì	defiladed position, concealment
3.	cheûng-ngoî-màt	barrier, obstacle
4.	ch'ik-haû	patrol
5.	chong-kuî	equipment
6.	ch'ut-faàt	to start off
7.	hâ kaàn-iù mîng-lîng	to give abstract order
8.	leî-yûng	to utilize
9.	lìn-lòk foō-hô*	control sign
10.	nap-teî	draw (terrain)
11.	peî-mìn	to avoid
12.	pô-hâ	subordinate
13.	shau-tsaâp ts'îng-pò iù-tìm	to collect essential elements of information (EEI)
14.	saû-shòk chìn-taù	reconnaissance action
15.	shuê-mûk	trees
16.	tiû-tûng	movement
17.	tsìp-chuk	to contact
18.	tsôh-piu	coordinates
19.	ts'ž-cham lô-sìn	compass course

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

995

承 shīng: to bear; to hold; to receive; to undertake; to acknowledge; to promise.

承繼 shīng-kài: to adopt an heir to continue.

承認 shīng-yìng: to acknowledge; to confess; to grant recognition.

707

摸 móh: to feel with the hands; to catch.

摸魚 móh uě: to catch fish with hands.

556

虧 kw'ai: deficiency; loss.

虧欠 kw'ai hìm: in debt; arrears.

虧空 kw'ai-hung: to embezzle; deficit.

虧本 kw'ai poón: to lose in capital invested.

承 摸 虧

承 摸 虧

76

置 chì: to buy; to arrange; to put aside.

安置 on-chì: to arrange; to place.

置業 chì ìp: to buy property

位置 wâi-chì: position; situation.

1338

磁 ts'ī: magnetic; iron ore.

磁石 ts'ī-shêk: lodestone.

置 磁

置 磁

READING MATERIAL

880

暴 pò: violent; cruel; malicious.

暴動 pò-tùng: riot; disturbance.

暴露 pò-lò: exposed; uncovered.

894

輩 pooi: a class; sort; generation

尊輩 tsuen-pooi: your senior.

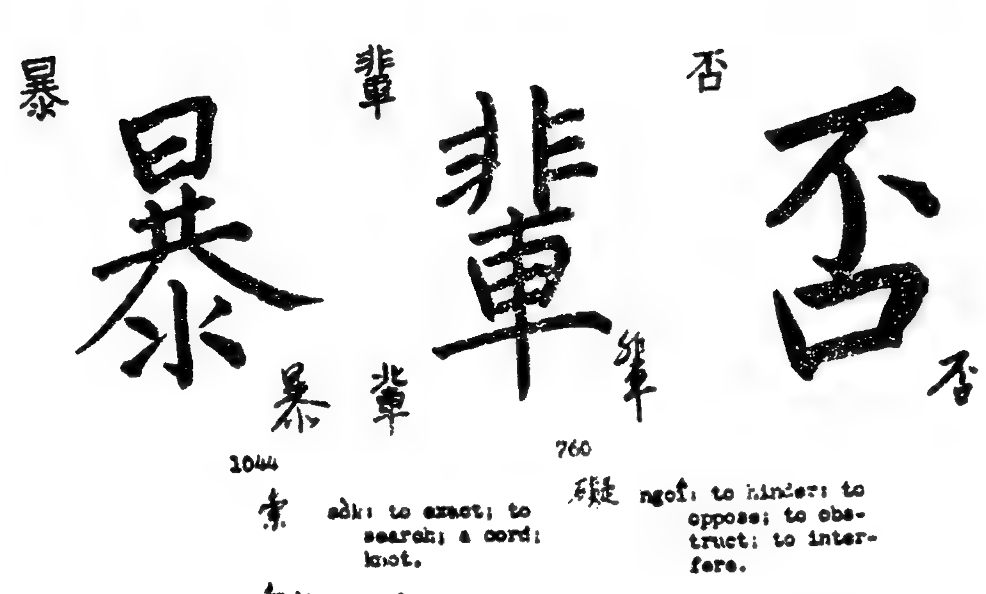
同輩 t'ùng-pooi: comrade; the same generation.

183

否 fau: negative; no

是否 si fau: is it so or not; yes or no

否認 fau-ying: deny



1044

索 sòk: to exact; to search; a cord; knot.

索詐 sòk-chà: to extort; to blackmail.

繩索 shing sòk: rope; cord.

760

礙 ngoi: to hinder; to oppose; to obstruct; to interfere.

妨礙 fòng-ngoi: impediment; hindrance.

障礙 cheùng-ngoi: obstruction; hindrance.



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

我軍某一連長派出一隊 ch'ik-候渡河 sau 索敵軍陣地,找尋情報要點.連長先在指揮所對 ch'ik-候隊長下簡要命令,用地圖座標,指示他如何可以抵達目的地.

ch'ik-候隊長承命之後,轉對部下下簡要命令,并檢查部下之衣服同裝具.再將集合地點,連 lök foō- 號,目的地之磁針路線等等,一一指示清楚.

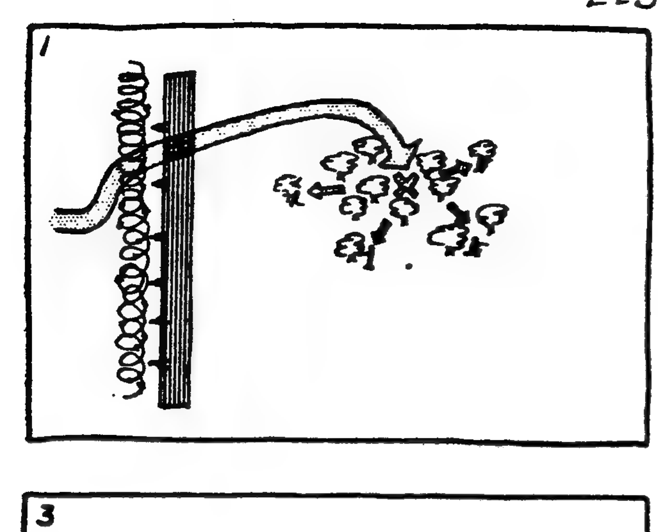
第二日破曉之前,ch'ik-候隊出發,先通過陣地前之cheung礙物然後利用che-pai 位置,如樹木, nap 地等等,摸索前進.我部隊自始至終,避免與敵接chuk否則被敵人消滅,反為自己輸虧.

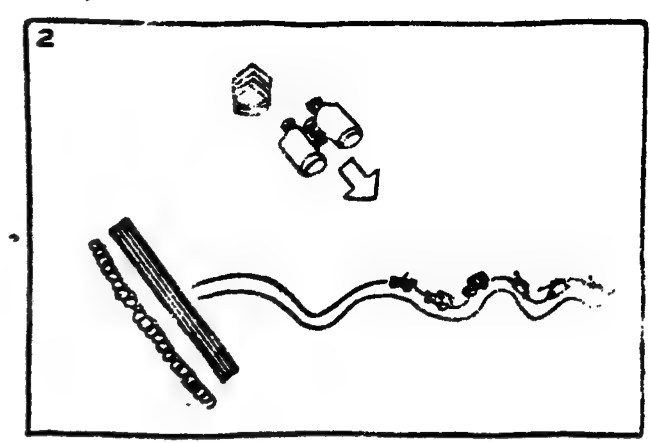
LESSON 9

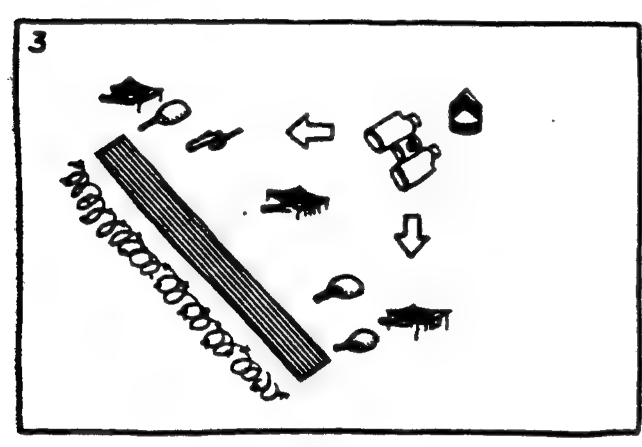
WRITING MATERIAL

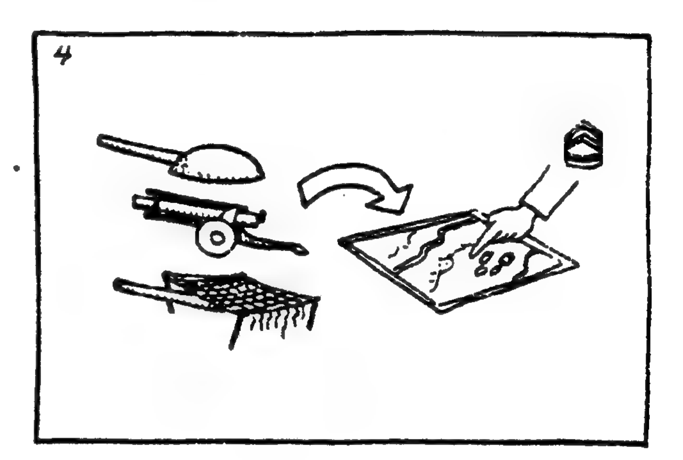
Character	Details
磁	Character Number 1338, Radical Number 112 石, Stroke Number 14
摸	Character Number 707, Radical Number 64 扌, 手, Stroke Number 14
索	Character Number 1044, Radical Number 120 糸, Stroke Number 10
礙	Character Number 760, Radical Number 112 石, Stroke Number 19
置	Character Number 76, Radical Number 122 罒, 网, Stroke Number 13

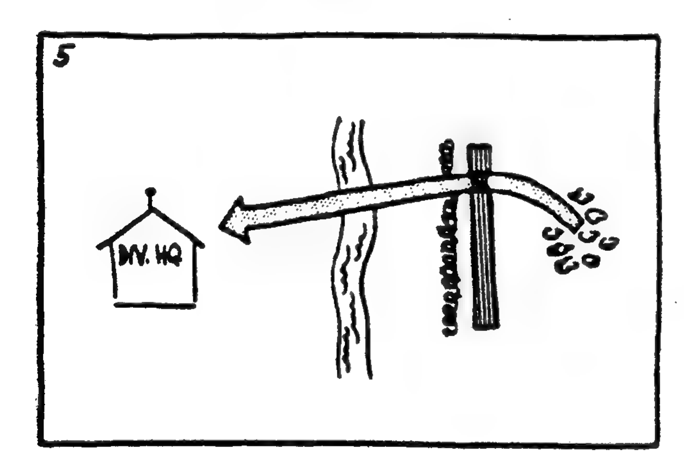
LESSON 10

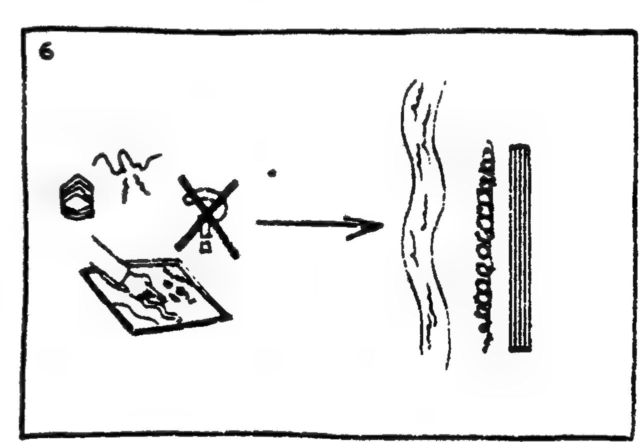












LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Taî-î yât t'in-kwong kè shî-haû, ngŏh-teî kè ch'ik-haû tuî* tò-chôh pin shuè à ?

Taàp: Taî-î yât t'in-kwong kè shî-haû, ngŏh-teî kè ch'ik-haû tuî* sam-yâp tîk sìn kè haû-pîn, tò-chôh yat-kòh yán-paî waî-chî shuè.

M: Kôh chân-shî k'uî-teî p'aaî-ch'ut saû-ping tsô mi-yĕ à?

T: Kôh chân-shî k'uî-teî p'aaî-ch'ut saû-ping kaam-shî tîk-yān tsìp-kân, t'ūng fōng-chî tîk-yān kè k'eî-tsaâp.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng yûng mông-uĕn-kèng koon-ch'aàt mi-yĕ à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng yûng mông-uĕn-kèng koon-ch'aàt tîk-yān kè chân-teî t'ūng tîk-yān pô-tuî* kè wân-tûng.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng t'aî-kìn ti mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uî t'aî-kìn yat-tuî hô ch'eûng kè oô-sûng-tuî*, yaû chìn-ch'e t'ūng kòk chûng ch'e heûng ts'ìn-sìn ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng yaû koon-ch'aàt-tò tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uî yaû koon-ch'aat-tò tîk-yān kè fōng-uê kung-sê.

M: Tîk-yān kè fōng-sìn-shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ à?

T: Tîk-yān ke fōng-sìn-shuè yaŭ kòk chûng îm-t'aî t'ūng ngaî-chong kè ping-heî.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng koon-ch'aàt-tò kôh ti yĕ chi-haû, k'uî tìm-teûng* keî-chuê k'uî-teî à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheûng tseung kôh ti kung-sê t'ūng ping-hèî kè waî-chî piu-tîng haî teî-t'ô sheûng-pîn.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uī-teî uēn-shīng yâm-mô chi-haû, k'uī-teî tsaû tîm à?

T: K'uī-teî uēn-shīng yâm-mô chi-haû, k'uī-teî tsaû hó siú-sam kôm faan huì.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng tseung kôh ti ts'ìng-pò heùng pin shuè pò-kò à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng tseung kôh ti ts'ìng-pò heùng sz sz-lîng-pô pò-kò.

M: Sz-pô tak-tó kôh ti ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, k'uī-teî tîm-yeûng* leî-yûng kôh ti ts'ìng-pò à?

T: Sz-pô kan-kuì kôh ti ts'ìng-pò tsòk tîk-ts'ìng-p'oòn-tuên.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: By day break the next day, how far had our partrol gotten?

Answer: At day break the next day, our patrol penetrated the rear of the enemy lines, and reached a defiladed position.

Q: At that time, why did they (our forces) send out scouts?

A: At that time, they sent out scouts to watch the enemy's approach, and to prevent a surprise attack from the enemy.

Q: What did the patrol leader observe with the binoculars?

A: The patrol leader, using the binoculars, observed the enemy positions and the movements of the enemy units.

Q: What has the patrol leader observed?

A: He has observed a long convoy. There were tanks and various kinds of vehicles heading for the front.

Q: What has the patrol leader also observed of the enemy?

A: He has also observed the enemy's fortifications.

Q: What were there at the enemy's defense lines?

A: There were various kinds of emplacements and camouflaged weapons at the enemy's defense lines.

Q: After the patrol leader observed all these things, how did he memorize them?

A: The patrol leader located those fortifications and weapons on the map.

Q: After they accomplished their mission, what did they do?

A: After they accomplished their mission, they cauticusly returned.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: To where did the patrol leader report this information?

A: The patrol leader reported this information to the division headquarters.

Q: After the division headquarters received the intelligence report, how did they utilize it?

A: The division headquarters, according to this information, worked out an estimate of the enemy situation.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Where can we conceal our equipment in this area?
2. Take your position and be ready for any enemy surprise attack.
3. She accomplished her mission by giving up her life.
4. Make an estimate of the enemy situation and send it to me.
5. I believe that field is mined. Look out.
6. You should send out a few scouts before advancing the entire company.
7. Your report is good. It has all the essential information that we need.
8. It is quite difficult to camouflage a large convoy.
9. The use of binoculars is not necessary for such a short distance.
10. Use you field glass to observe anything within sight.
11. Be alert and ready at all times for a surprise attack tonight.
12. The police are putting you under surveillance twenty-four hours a day.
13. This defense line will prevent the enemy to break through our positions.
14. Two tanks are approaching from the south. Have your hand grenades and bazooka ready for action.
15. By means of observation, I will be able to understand the problem better.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. We have emplacements and camouflaged weapons along our defense line.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-ch'e	tank
2.	tsìp-kân	to get close, approach
3.	fōng-chì	to prevent
4.	fōng-sìn	defense line
5.	ìm-t'aì	emplacement
6.	kaam-shî	to watch; surveillance
7.	k'eì-tsaâp	surprise attack
8.	koon-ch'aàt	to observe; observation
9.	mông-uĕn-kèng	binoculars, field glass
10.	ngaî-chong	camouflage
11.	oô-sùng-tuî* (heì-ch'e tuî*)	convoy (land)
12.	piu-tîng	to locate, orient
13.	saŭ-ping	scout
14.	ts'ìn-tsùn	to advance
15.	tsòk tîk-ts'ìng p'oòn-tuên	to work out the estimate of the enemy situation
16.	uēn-shìng	to complete, accomplish
17.	waî-chì	position
18.	wân-tûng	movement
19.	yán-paì	to conceal; concealment

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

379

戒 kaaì: to warn; caution; to abstain

戒酒 kaaì tsaú: abstain from spirit or wine

戒煙 kaaì in: give up smoking

戒嚴 kaaì-ìm: curfew

戒指 kaaì-chí: ring (finger)

228

伏 fûk: to prostrate: to overcome

埋伏 maaì-fûk: to ambush

伏兵 fûk-ping: an ambush

806

擺 paaí: to display; to arrange; to vibrate.

擺開 paaí hoi: to spread out, to display.

擺布 paaí-pò: to direct: to show.

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 摆

901

判 p'oòn: to judge; to decide.

判决 p'oòn-k'uèt: a decision; decree; determination.

判斷 p'oòn-tuên: to give judgment; to be of opinion.

1835

匠 tseûng: mechanic; worker; artis…

木匠 mûk tseûng: carpenter.

石匠 shêk tseûng: stone-cutter.

判 匠

判 匠

判 匠

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

787

胡 cō: how; why; Mongol.

胡椒 oō-tsiu: pepper.

胡鬧 oō-naaū: to make a row.

1358

懂 túng: to understand.

懂得 túng tak: to understand.

不懂人事 pat túng yān-sī: slow witted; unreasonable

762

粘 nīm: to adhere; glutinous; sticky.

黏實 nīm shât: to paste it tight.

粘米 chim maĭ: ordinary rice.

胡 懂 粘

胡 懂 粘

638

驢 lö a donkey; ass.

驢仔 lö-tsí. donkey; ass.

135

錘 ch'uĭ: a hammer to pound; scale; weight

鐵錘 thit ch'uĭ: a hammer

錘爛 ch'uĭ-laān: hammer to pieces



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

第二日黎明時候，ch'ik-候隊深入敵線後方。Yān伏於一個yān pai位置處，佢地派出saû兵負責戒備，監shî敵人接近，防止奇襲。

隊長用望遠kèng觀察敵人陣地及其部隊運動。佢發現一隊擺列如長蛇之護送隊，有戰車及各種車，向前線前進。

佢又詳細觀察敵人之阝uê工事。防線處有各種im-體同ngaî裝兵器。ch'ik-候隊長即將此種工事與及兵器位置標定於地圖，然後拔隊歸去。

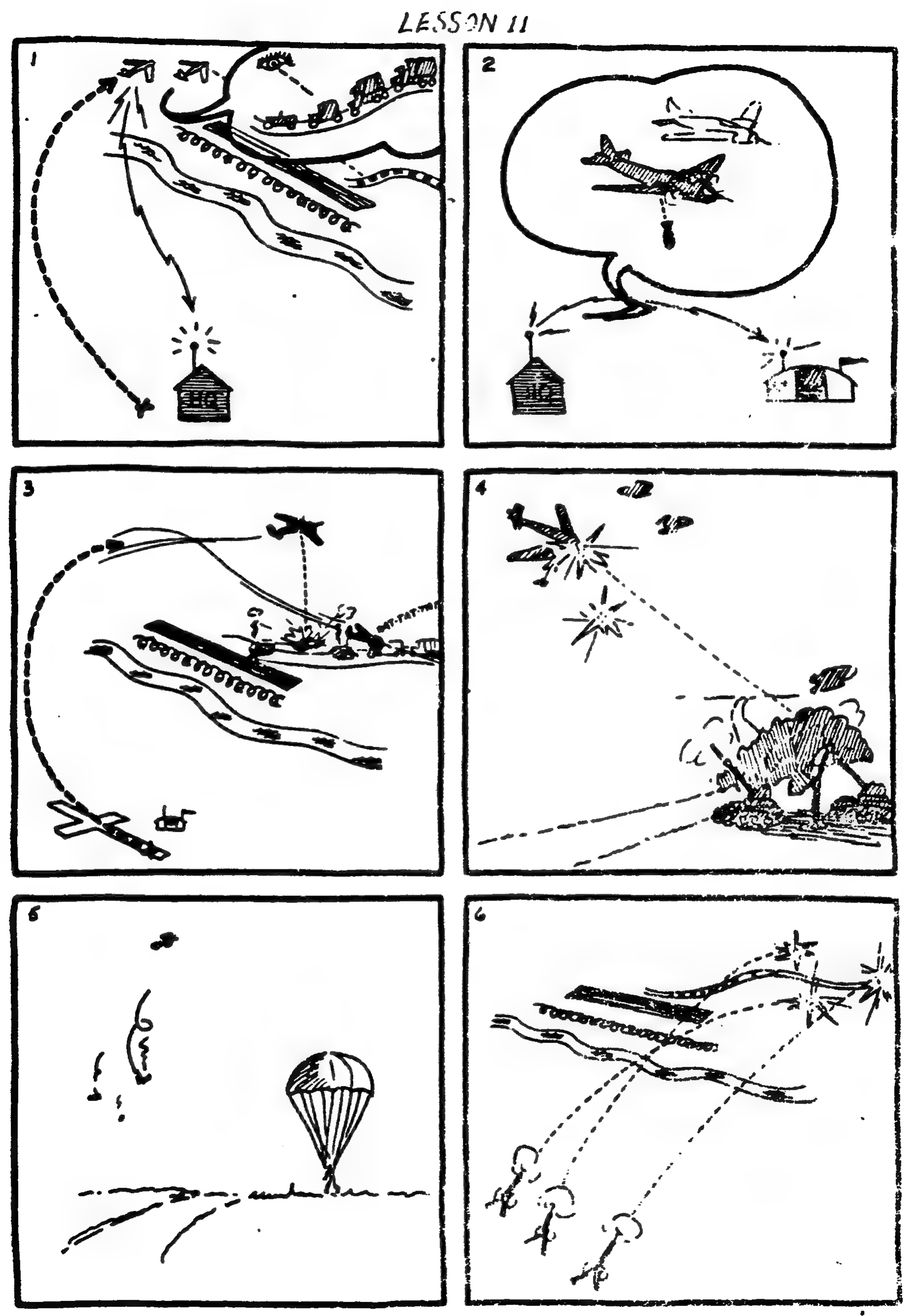
Ch'ik-候隊之情報報告，到達師司令部之後，師部即根據此種情報，以作敵情判斷。

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical
戒	379	7	62	戈
伏	228	6	9	亻，人
擺	806	18	64	扌，手
匠	1235	7	22	匚
判	901	7	18	刂，刀

LESSON 11



LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ko k'ap sz-lîng pô tak tô* yaû-kwaan tîk-yân kè ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, tsaû tìm-yeûng* huì tsô?

Taàp: K'uĭ-teî tseung ni ti ts'ìng-pò ìn-kaû ts'ing-ch'ôh chi-haû, tsaû tsôk yat-kôh p'oòn-tuèn, ìn-haû p'aaì ch'ut ching-ch'aàt-kei huì kôh kôh k'ui-wîk koon-ch'aàt shât-tsoî kè ts'ìng-yìng.

M: Ching-ch'aàt-kei haì kôh kôh k'ui-wîk t'aì-tô mi-yě?

T: K'uĭ-teî t'aì-tô yat-tuì tîk-yân kè oô-sùng-tuî* heùng ts'ìn sìn ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: K'uĭ-teî tìm-yeûng* t'ung-chi sz sz-lîng-pô?

T: K'uĭ-teî tsik-haak yûng mō-sìn-tîn t'ung-chi sz sz-lîng pô.

M: Sz-pô t'ung-chi mi-yě kè pô-tuî*?

T: Sz-pô t'ung-chi hung-kwan pô-tuî*.

M: Hung-kwan p'aaì mi-yě fei-kei huì kwang-chà t'ûng sò-shê tîk-yân?

T: Hung-kwan p'aaì chìn-taù kwang-chà-kei huì kwang-chà t'ûng sò-shê tîk-yân.

M: Hing kwang-chà-kei yaû pin shuè heì-fei?

T: Hing kwang-chà-kei yaû siû-yìng kei-ch'eûng heì-fei.

M: Hing kwang-chà-kei iû keî noî ìn-haû tò mûk-piu k'ui-wîk?

T: Hing kwang-chà-kei haì keî fan-chung chi-noî tò mûk-piu k'ui-wîk.

M: K'uĭ-teî kìn-tô tîk-yân tsaû tìm-yeûng*.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: K'uī-teî kìn-tô tîk-yān tsaû sò-shê t'ùng kwang-châ tîk-yān.

M: Hó toh tîk-yān kè mi-yě peî p'òh-waaî-chôh?

T: Hó toh tîk-yān kè t'aân-hak-ch'e peî p'òh-waaî-chôh.

M: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān kè t'aân-hak-ch'e tîm-yeûng*?

T: Yaŭ keî kà tîk-yān kè t'aân-hak ch'e ch'ìt-lâp yat-kòh fōng-hung chân-teî.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè fei-kei yaŭ mŏ peî tîk-yān tâ-chùng?

T: Yaŭ, yaŭ yat-kà fei-kei peî tîk-yān tâ-chùng, k'eî-uē kè fei-kei to on-ts'uēn fei faân kei-teî.

M: Peî tâ-chùng kè fei-kei kè fei-haāng-uēn tîm-yeûng*?

T: Fei-haāng-uēn kìn fei-kei shiu-cheûk-chôh, tsaû tsik-haak t'iù saân, on-ts'uēn kòng-lôk.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû tîm-yeûng* fung-sôh ni kòh tsaâp-chung k'ui-wîk?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû yûng chôh-chî shê-kik fung-sôh ni kòh tsaâp-chung k'ui-wîk.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After the high headquarters received the intelligence concerning the enemy, what did they do?

Answer: After they thoroughly studied the intelligence they made an estimate. Then they sent a reconnaissance plane to that area to observe the actual situation.

Q: What did the reconnaissance plane see at that area?

A: They saw an enemy convoy advancing toward the front.

Q: How did they inform the division headquarters?

A: They immediately informed the division headquarters by radio.

Q: What unit did the division headquarters inform?

A: The division headquarters informed the Air Force.

Q: What kind of planes did the Air Force send out to bomb and strafe the enemy?

A: The Air Force sent out fighter-bombers to bomb and strafe the enemy.

Q: From what place did the light bomber take off?

A: The light bomber took off from the airstrip.

Q: How long did the light bomber take to reach the target area?

A: The light bomber arrived at the target area within a few minutes.

Q: What did they do when they saw the enemy?

A: When they saw the enemy they bombed and strafed them.

Q: What of the enemy's was destroyed?

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Many of the enemy's tanks were destroyed.

Q: What did some of the enemy's tanks do?

A: Several enemy tanks set up an air-defense position.

Q: Were any of our planes hit by the enemy?

A: Yes, one of our planes was hit by the enemy; the rest of the planes returned to the base safely.

Q: What happened to the pilot of the plane that was hit?

A: When the pilot saw that the plane caught fire, he parachuted immediately and landed safely.

Q: How did our force interdict this concentration area?

A: Our force used interdiction fire to interdict this concentration area.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. General Chan wants to concentrate all his men in the vicinity of the airport.
2. When the plane is on fire, you have to parachute for safety.
3. Driving a tank is not any easier than driving an automible.
4. I hit the target the first time but I missed it the second time.
5. That plane is large, but it can land on a small airfield.
6. Our fighter bombers reached their target area and bombed the enemy airstrip.
7. Who is the highest ranking officer in your group?
8. She went to the Far East to study the actual situation of that country.
9. If the answer is not given within five minutes, we will attack.
10. I want to shoot at the enemy with this machine gun, but I am out of ammunition.
11. When do you use interdiction fire?
12. The actual situation is very bad. Be prepared.
13. The tank was hit and burned at the intersection.
14. You will have to study the problem further, and give me the solution within a month if possible.
15. Our objective is the airstrip on the south of the city approximately twenty-five miles from here.
16. Concentrate your fire on the fighter bomber and never mind about the others.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1. chìn-taù kwang-chà-kei — fighter bomber
2. chóh-chì shê-kik — interdiction fire
3. ìn-kaù — to study
4. ko-k'ap — high-ranking
5. k'ui-wîk — area
6. mûk-piu — objective, target
7. shiu-cheûk — to get burned
8. sò-shê — to strafe
9. siú-yìng kei-ch'eúng — small airfield, airstrip
10. t'aàn-hak-ch'e — tank
11. tsaâp-chung — to concentrate, mass; concentration

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

155

挑 t'iu: to bear a load; to choose; to pick out; to irritate; to provoke; to mix up.

挑夫 t'iu-foo: a coolie.

挑選 t'iu-suén: to elect; to choose.

挑動 t'iu tũng: to stir up.

890

撲 p'òk: to strike down; to rush against.

撲滅 p'òk-mit: to extinguish

922

沒 moôt: to perish; loss; (Mandarin)

埋沒 maaī-moôt: hidden; unknown.

沒收 moôt-shau: to be confiscated.

挑 撲 沒

挑 撲 沒

挑 撲 沒 沒

10

猜 ch'aai: to guess, suspect.

猜謎 ch'aai-maī: to guess riddles

猜想 ch'aai-séung: to conjecture

猜枚 ch'aai-mooī: morra (game of guessing at fingers held up)

560

棍 kwàn. a stick; club; rod.

一條棍 yat t'iū kwàn: a stick; a cane.

光棍 kwong-kwàn: rascal.

棍徒 kwàn t'ō: ruffian; rowdy.

棍騙 kwàn-p'īn: to cheat.

猜 棍

猜 棍

猜 棍

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

22

抓 chaaú: to scratch

抓爛 chaaú-laân: to lacerate

抓搲 chaaó-wá: to scratch

267

稀 hei: few; far apart; watery

稀疏 hei-shoh: wide apart

稀稀地 hei-hei-tei: sparsely; watery.

52

桌 ch'euk: table; stand.

抓 稀 桌 卓

抓 稀 桌

抓 稀 棹

1446

恩 yan: kindness; grace; favor.

恩人 yan-yān: benefactor; patron.

恩惠 yan-waî. grace; bounty.

585

犂 laī: a plow; to plow.

犂田 laī t'īn: to plow.

犂耙 laī-p'ā: a harrow.

恩 犂

恩 犂

恩 犂

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

高級司令部研究ch'ik-候隊所得情報之後,即刻派出偵察機去觀察實在情形.果然見倒敵人護送隊向前線前進.機員即刻用無線電通知師司令部.

師部根據報告,通知空軍.空軍派出戰鬥轟炸機,實行轟炸.空軍挑選輕轟炸機數架,由小 yíng 機場起飛.數分鐘內即到目標區域.

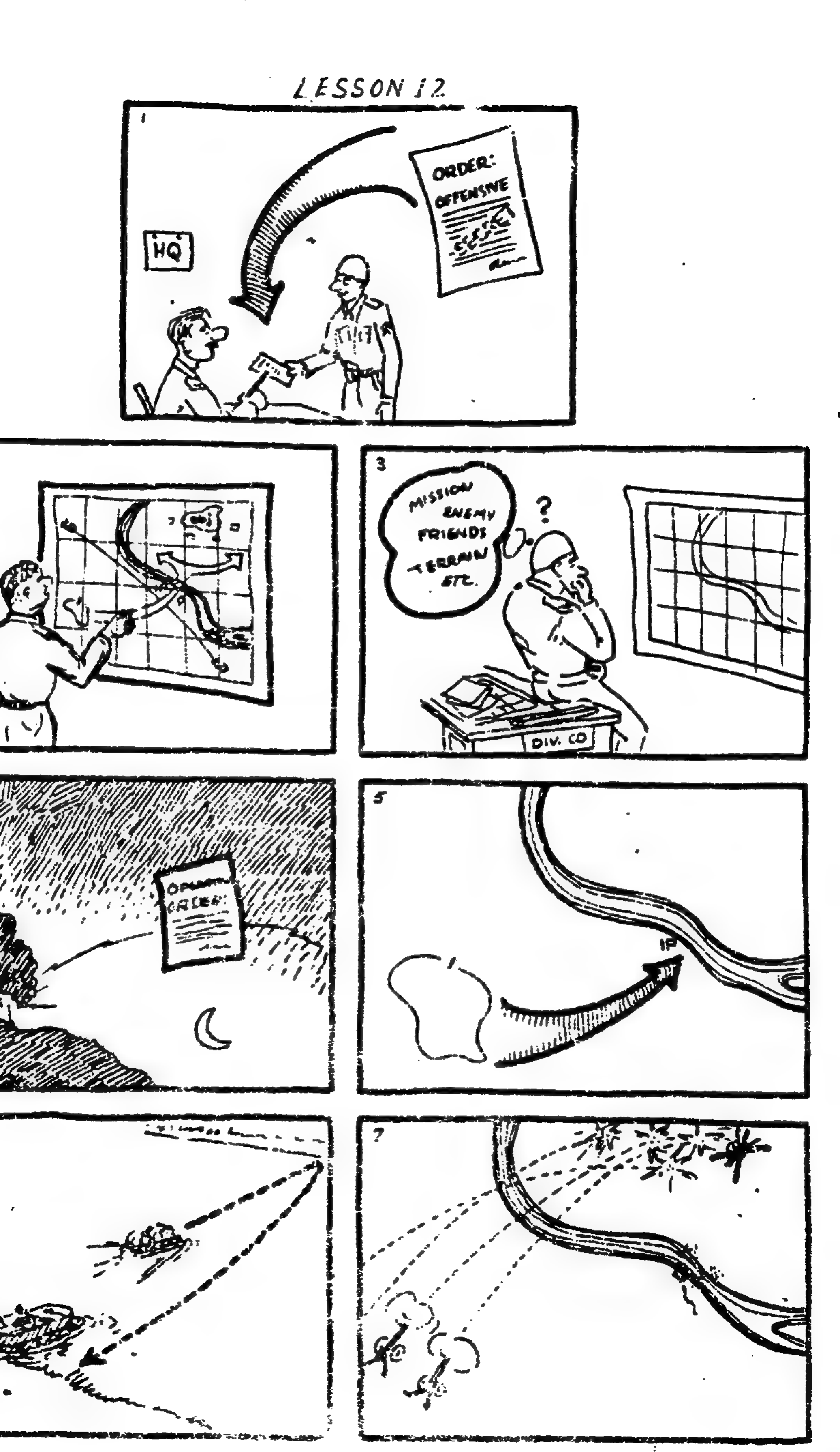
飛機向敵人撲攻,轟炸後掃射.敵人之戰車被破壞者極多.但有數架臨時設立一防空陣地,向我機反擊,一機中彈被毀.飛行員跳傘,安全降落.最後我軍用阻止射擊,封鎖此集中區域.

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical
挑	1155	9	64	扌，手
撲	890	15	64	扌，手
沒	722	7	85	氵，水
棍	560	12	75	木，木
恩	1446	10	61	心

LESSON 12



ORDER:
OFFENSIVE
HQ
MISSION
ENEMY
FRIENDS
TERRAIN
ETC.
?
DIV. CO
IP

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ch'uēn-lìng yān-uēn sùng mi-yĕ tò poòn sz sz-pô?

Taàp: Ch'uēn-lìng yān-uēn sùng yat-kìn kìk-kei-mât mìng-lìng tò poòn sz sz-pô.

M: Ni kìn mìng-lìng kòng mi-yĕ?

T: Ni kìn mìng-lìng kiù poòn sz chuēn-ì kung-shaì.

M: Sz-lìng-pô tsìp-tò mìng-lìng chi-haû, tsaû tìm-yeûng* kung-tsòk?

T: Sz-lìng-pô kè ch'aam-maū yān-uēn tsìp-tó mìng-lìng chi-haû, tsaû kan-kuì mìng-lìng kaì-waàk tsòk-chìn, k'uĭ-teì fei-sheūng-chi mōng.

M: Sz-cheûng tong-shì kè kung-tsòk tìm-yeûng*?

T: Sz-cheûng kan-kuì sz kè yâm-mô, tìk kwan t'ūng ngŏh kwan leûng-fong-mìn kè ts'ìng-yìng, teì-yìng, t'ūng k'eì-t'a yaŭ-kwaan kè ts'ìng-pō, tsòk chông-fòng p'oòn tuèn.

M: Kôh maăn meì t'in-kwong chi-ts'ìn, ngŏh-teì kè yat-kòh lìn tìm-yeûng*?

T: Kôh maăn meì t'in-kwong chi-ts'ìn, ngŏh-teì kè yat-kòh lìn tsìp-tò tsòk-chìn mìng-lìng.

M: Kôh kòh lìn yaū pin shuè heùng pin shuè ts'ìn-tsùn?

T: Kôh kòh lìn yaū lìn tsaâp-hôp-teì heùng hōh pin kè t'ung-kwòh-tìm ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: K'uĭ-teì tìm-yeûng* tô hōh?

T: Hōh shuè yaŭ faū-k'iū shuēn tàng k'uì-teì tô hōh.

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Kôh ti shuēn yaū mi-yě pô-tuî* kà-shaî.

T: Mooĭ chèk shuēn yaŭ leŭng-kôh kung-ping, k'uĭ-teî kà-shaî faū-k'iū-shuēn loî ooî tô-haû shuè.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping ts'în-tsùn kè shî-haû, ngŏh-teî kè p'aaù-ping tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping ts'în-tsùn kè shî-haû, p'aaù-ping hoi-ch'î maăng-lî+ kè taân-môk shê-kik.

M: Ni ts'ż taân*-môk shê-kik kè chuê-iù mûk-tik haî mi-yě?

T: Ni ts'ż taân*-môk shê-kik kè chuê iù mûk-tik haî îm-oô ngŏh kwan ts'în-tsùn, p'òh-waaî tîk kwan kè chân-teî, aàt-chaî tîk kwan kè hăng-tûng, t'ūng ts'ît-t'uēn tîk-yān kè pô-k'ap-sîn tâng tâng.

M: Ni ts'ż p'aaù-kik kè kît-kwôh tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ni ts'ż p'aaù-kik kè kît-kwôh, ngŏh kwan tak-tô fôh-lîk yau-shaî.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What did the courier deliver to this division headquarters?

Answer: The courier delivered a secret order to this division headquarters.

Q: What did this order say?

A: This order ordered this division to shift to offensive.

Q: After the headquarters received the order, what did they do?

A: After the staff members of the headquarters received the order, they mapped out the operation according to the order. They were extremely busy.

Q: What did the division commander then do?

A: The division commander, according to the mission of the division, the situation of the enemy troops and our forces, terrain, and other information concerned, made an estimate of the situation.

Q: That night before dawn, what happened to one of our companies?

A: That night before dawn, one of our companies received the operation order.

Q: From where and to where did that company advance?

A: That company advanced from the company assembly area toward the riverside's initial point.

Q: How did they cross the river?

A: There were pontoon boats waiting along the river for their crossing.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: By what unit were the pontoon boats operated?

A: There were two engineers in each boat. They operated the pontoon boat back and forth as a ferry.

Q: When our infantry pushed on, what did our artillery do?

A: When our infantry pushed on, the artillery opened up with a heavy fire of barrages.

Q: What was the main purpose of the fire of barrages this time?

A: The main purpose of the fire of barrages this time was to cover our forces advance, to destroy the enemy positions, to suppress the enemy's action, to cut off the enemy's supply line, etc.

Q: What was the result of the shelling this time?

A: As a result of the shelling this time, our force gained fire superiority.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Our unit gained fire superiority by using additional artillery pieces and other modern weapons.
2. The point of river crossing is approximately 60 miles south of this area.
3. You had better spend more time to study the terrain of this area.
4. When our unit starts to advance, the company will request artillery support.
5. Sgt Lee, delivered this order to Capt Wŏng at the division headquarters.
6. Our fire power is so devastating that everything within a radius of one mile will be destroyed.
7. This matter is top secret. Do not entrust it to any courier.
8. He may be stupid in some fields but he knows how to operate automobiles, boats and airplanes.
9. For the sake of safety, please swim close to the river bank.
10. Usually fire superiority will make a difference between victory and defeat.
11. We will cross the river in the morning. The pontoon boats are to be ready by tonight.
12. The enemy will launch a sneak attack tonight.
13. I still cannot make an estimate of the situation with this available information.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Your order is to suppress enemy advance toward this sector.

15. The barrage is intended to destroy the enemy's fortifications.

16. I need a courier to carry this urgent message to the headquarters.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	aàt-chaì	to suppress
2.	chông-fòng p'oòn-tuèn	estimate of the situation
3.	chuén-ì	to shift to
4.	ch'uēn-lîng yān-uēn	courier
5.	faàt-tûng	to initiate, launch
6.	faū-k'iū-shuēn	pontoon boat
7.	fóh-lîk	fire power
8.	fóh-lîk yau-shaì	fire superiority
9.	kîk-kei-mât	secret
10.	maăng-lît	devastating, violent
11.	poón sz sz-pô	our division Hqs
12.	taân-môk shê-kik	fire of barrages
13.	teî-yìng	terrain
14.	tô-haŭ	ferry (place)
15.	t'ung-kwòh tìm (ch'ut-faàt-tìm)	initial point

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

884

抱 p'ŏ: to embrace; to carry in arms; to cherish.

抱病 p'ŏ pêng: to be ill.

抱歉 p'ŏ-hîp: I regret; I am sorry.

16

賺 chaân: earn, gain, to make profit.

賺錢 chaân-ts'în: to earn money.

賺佣 chaân-yûng: to make a commission.

338

姨 Ī: maternal aunt (1) sister-in-law

姨母 Ī-mŏ: elder maternal aunt

姨媽 Ī-ma: elder maternal aunt

姨丈 Ī-cheûng: husband of maternal aunt

姨表 Ī-piú: maternal first cousins

抱 賺 姨

1344

奪 tuêt: to take by force; to take away.

奪去 tuêt hui: to take away by force.

奪回 tuêt ooī: to get back by force.

830

憑 p'Ĭng: proof; to lean on; trust in.

憑據 p'ăng-kuî: proof; evidence.

文憑 mân-p'ăng: diploma; certificate.

奪 憑

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1346

堆 tui: heap; mass; pile; to heap.

草堆 ts'ó tui: a stack of straw.

堆塞 tui-sak: to block up; to obstruct.

1433

禍 wôn: calamity; woe; misfortune.

惹禍 yě wôn: to bring misfortune on oneself.

禍根 wôn kan: the seed of misfortune.

1431

鍋 woh: pot; boiler; pan; caldron.

煖鍋 nuĕn woh: heater for wine or food.

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 禍

23

掉 chaaû: to row, propel

掉艇 chaaû-tĕng: to row a boat

掉槳 chaaû-tséung: to pull an oar

1177

塗 t'ŏ: to daub; to blot out; mire; dirt.

塗污 t'ŏ oo: to besmear.

塗改 t'ŏ koí: to alter.

掉 塗

掉 塗

棹 櫂 掉 塗

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

傳令人員送一件極機密命令到師部。命本師轉移攻勢。因此司令部參謀人員計劃作戰非常之忙。

師長根據本師所負任務，與及敵我兩軍情形，地形，同其他有關之情報，作狀況判斷。

未天光之前，本師一個連接到作戰命令由連集合地向河邊通過點前進。河邊已有fan橋船在此處等候。每船有兩工兵，擔任shai船工作。來來去去，運全連官兵過河。

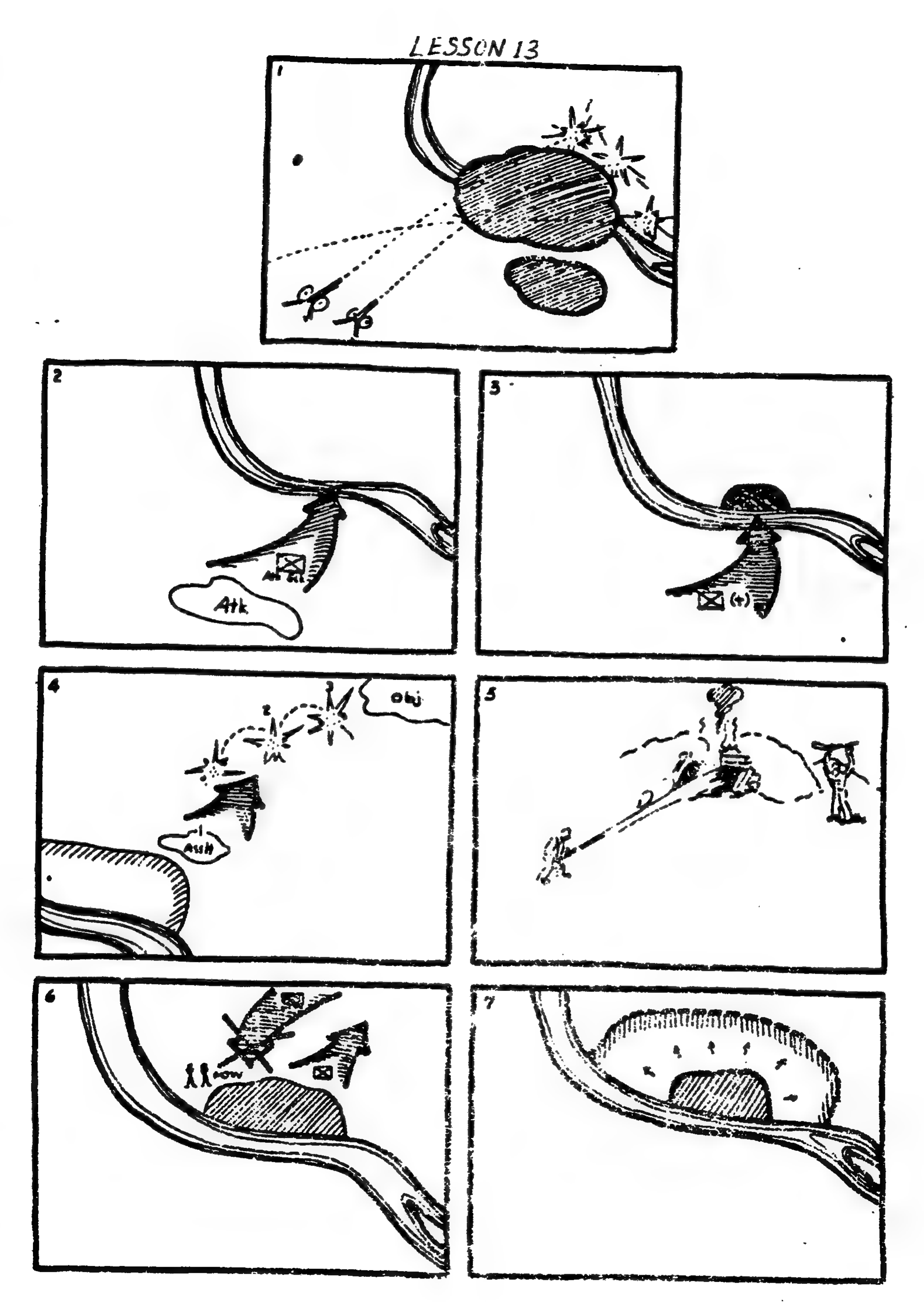
我方砲兵開始猛烈射擊，協助步兵前進，同時毀壞敵軍陣地，壓制敵軍行動，與及切斷其補給線。

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Details
抱	Character Number 884; Radical Number 64 (扌, 手); Stroke Number 8
賺	Character Number 16; Radical Number 154 (貝); Stroke Number 17
姨	Character Number 338; Radical Number 38 (女); Stroke Number 9
奪	Character Number 1344; Radical Number 37 (大); Stroke Number 14
憑	Character Number 830; Radical Number 61 (心); Stroke Number 16

LESSON 13



LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Haî tsòk-chìn kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* che-paì ngŏh kwan kè haàng-tûng?

Taàp: Haî tsòk-chìn kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî yûng in-môk che-paì ngŏh kwan kè haàng-tûng; yaū-k'eì-shî tô hōh kè teî-tìm kàng sui-ìù yûng in-môk laì che-paì.

M: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik kuì-tìm haî yûng laì tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik kuì-tìm haî yûng laì ìm-oô ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî* leì-hoi kung-kik chún-peî waî-chì?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping kung-kik t'ai-tuî* leì-hoi kung-kik chún-peî waî-chì.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping kung-kik t'ai-tuî* leì-hoi kung-kik chún-peî waî-chì chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tìm-yeûng* à?

T: K'uĭ-teî tsaû hoi-ch'ì tô hōh, ì-ch'è tô hōh shìng-kung.

M: Poón sz p'aaì mi-yĕ pô-tuî* huì tsang-oōn?

T: Poón sz p'aaì haû-tsûk t'ai-tuî* huì tsang-oōn.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh lìn huì-tò yat-kòh tìm-yeûng* kè waî-chì?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh lìn huì-tò yat-kòh hó kè ch'ung-fung chún-peî waî- chì.

M: Kóh kòh lìn sin yûng pin chúng shê-kik?

T: Kóh kòh lìn sin yûng ch'ung-fung shê-kik.

M: K'uĭ-teî ts'ìn-tsùn tò pin shuè?

T: K'uĭ-teî heûng tìk-yān ch'ung-fung, ts'ìn-tsùn tò tìk-yān kè chân-teî. K'uĭ-teî nāng-kaù tsìp-kân tìk-yān, t'ūng ts'im-mìt tìk-yān.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* kung-kik tîk-yăn kè p'aaû-ngaăn?

T: K'uĭ-teî yûng p'àn-fôh-heî p'àn-shê tîk-yăn kè p'aaû-ngaăn.

M: Ni ts'ž kung-kik kè kìt-kwôh tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ni ts'ž kung-kik hô shìng-kung. Tîk-yăn peî pik t'aû-hông, waâk-chê peî ts'im-mît.

M: Tîk-yăn shat-paaî-chôh chi-haû, tîk-yăn yaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yăn heûng ngŏh kwan faân-kung, seûng kôn ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* faan kwôh hŏh.

M: Tîk-yăn faân-kung kè kìt-kwôh tîm-yeûng* â?

T: Kìt-kwôh tîk-yăn peî ngŏh-teî kik-t'uì; tîk-yăn kè shaû-kwan peî ngŏh-teî foo-lŏ. Ngŏh kwan kw'òng-cheung k'iû-t'aû-pô.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: During the time of operation, how did we conceal our action?

Answer: During the time of operation, we employed a smoke screen to conceal our action, especially the river-crossing location had to be concealed with a smoke screen.

Q: For what were our fire bases?

A: Our fire bases were for covering our attack.

Q: Which units of our force left the attack position?

A: Our infantry attacking echelon left the attack position.

Q: After our infantry attacking echelon left the attack position, what did they do?

A: They initiated the river-crossing. It was very successful.

Q: What units were sent from our division for reinforcement?

A: Our division sent the successive echelon for reinforcement.

Q: What position did one of our companies reach?

A: One of our companies reached a good assault position.

Q: What kind of fire did that company first employ?

A: That company first employed marching fire.

Q: How far did they advance?

A: They charged against the enemy, advancing to the enemy's positions. They were able to get close to the enemy and annihilate the enemy.

Q: How did they attack the enemy's embrasure?

A: They used flame throwers to blow the enemy's embrasure.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What was the result of the attack this time?

A: This time the attack was very successful The enemy was either forced to surrender or was annihilated.

Q: After the enemy lost the combat, what did they do?

A: The enemy launched a counter-attack, intending to drive our troops back across the river.

Q: What was the result of the enemy's counter-attack?

A: The enemy was eventually beaten off. The enemy defenders were captured, and our troops expanded the bridgehead.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do you think you can get your men to the assault position by 0500 hours tomorrow?

2. Captain, I have two captives; both of them are high ranking officers.

3. Because of the lack of ammunition, we should not employ assault fire.

4. What action will you take when you reach the assault position?

5. The successive echelon will be here within an hour.

6. Our attacking echelon drove the enemies away from their bridgehead.

7. The 1st Company had set up the bridgehead at the initial stage of landing.

8. The fire coordinating center should be farther away from the front line.

9. I will take charge of the attacking position at the left and you will take charge the one at the right.

10. Our troops use hand grenades and flame throwers to destroy the enemy hiding inside of the emplacement.

11. You should camouflage the embrasure with something.

12. Please be quiet. We are approaching the front now.

13. I was forced to jump into the river. It was a good thing that I know how to swim.

14. The defenders of the airport were all annihilated.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Use your flame thrower to smoke out any enemy hidden in the caves.

16. Any action on the part of the enemy at this time can be advantageous to us.

17. Take your position, be ready, aim and fire.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ung-fung chûn-peî waî-chì	assault position
2.	ch'ung-fung shê-kik	assault fire, marching fire
3.	foo-lŏ	to capture (personnel) captive
4.	haăng-tûng	action
5.	haû-tsûk t'ai-tuî*	successive echelon
6.	k'iū-t'aū-pŏ	bridgehead
7.	kŏn	to drive away
8.	kung-kik chûn-peî waî-chì	attack position
9.	kung-kik kuì-tîm	base of fire
10.	kung-kik t'ai-tuî*	attacking echelon
11.	kw'òng-cheung	to expand; exploitation
12.	p'aaù-ngaăn	embrasure
13.	p'àn-fŏh-heì	flame thrower
14.	p'àn-shê	to spray, blow
15.	peî pik	to be forced
16.	shaû kwan	defenders (troops)
17.	ts'im-mît	to annihilate

READING MATERIAL

642

累 luî: to involve; to embarrass; to accumulate.

連累 lîn-luî: to involve some one.

受累 shaû luî: implicated.

拖累 t'oh luî: to involve other.

1499

勇 yũng: bravery; daring; courage.

勇敢 yũng-kôm: bravery; courage.

勇氣 yũng-hei: brave spirit; valor.

1046

喪 sòng: mourning; to lament; a funeral.

喪事 sòng sî: funeral affair.

喪禮 sòng laî: funeral rites.

喪失 sòng-shat: deprived of.

喪氣 sòng hei: crest-fallen; downcast.

累 勇 喪

累 勇 喪

累 勇 喪 喪

45

遮 che: to cover, an umbrella (Cl. pa)

雨遮 uǐ che: umbrella

遮住 che-chuê: cover over; conceal

916

羞 sau, ch'au: to put to shame; to feel ashamed.

羞恥 sau ch'î: shame.

羞辱 sau-yûk: to insult; to put to shame.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

13

澤 chaâk: benefits, moist, fertile.

潤澤 yûn-chaâk: healthy, robust

2

挨 aai: toward; against.

挨晚 aai-maân: towards evening

499

稈 kón: stubble; straw.

禾稈 wòh-kón: rice straw.

掃稈 sò kón: a straw broom.

澤 挨 稈

澤 挨 稈

259

瞎 hât: blind

瞎眼 hât ngaán: blind

371

稼 kà: to sow grain; (ka) agricultural work

稼穡 kà-shik: farming, sowing and reaping

稼穡艱難 kà-shik kaan-naân: the toils of a farmer's life

瞎 稼

瞎 稼

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

我軍用煙-mōk 遮-pai 行動向 tô河地點，復由攻擊據點掩護攻擊，步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置，開始tô河。

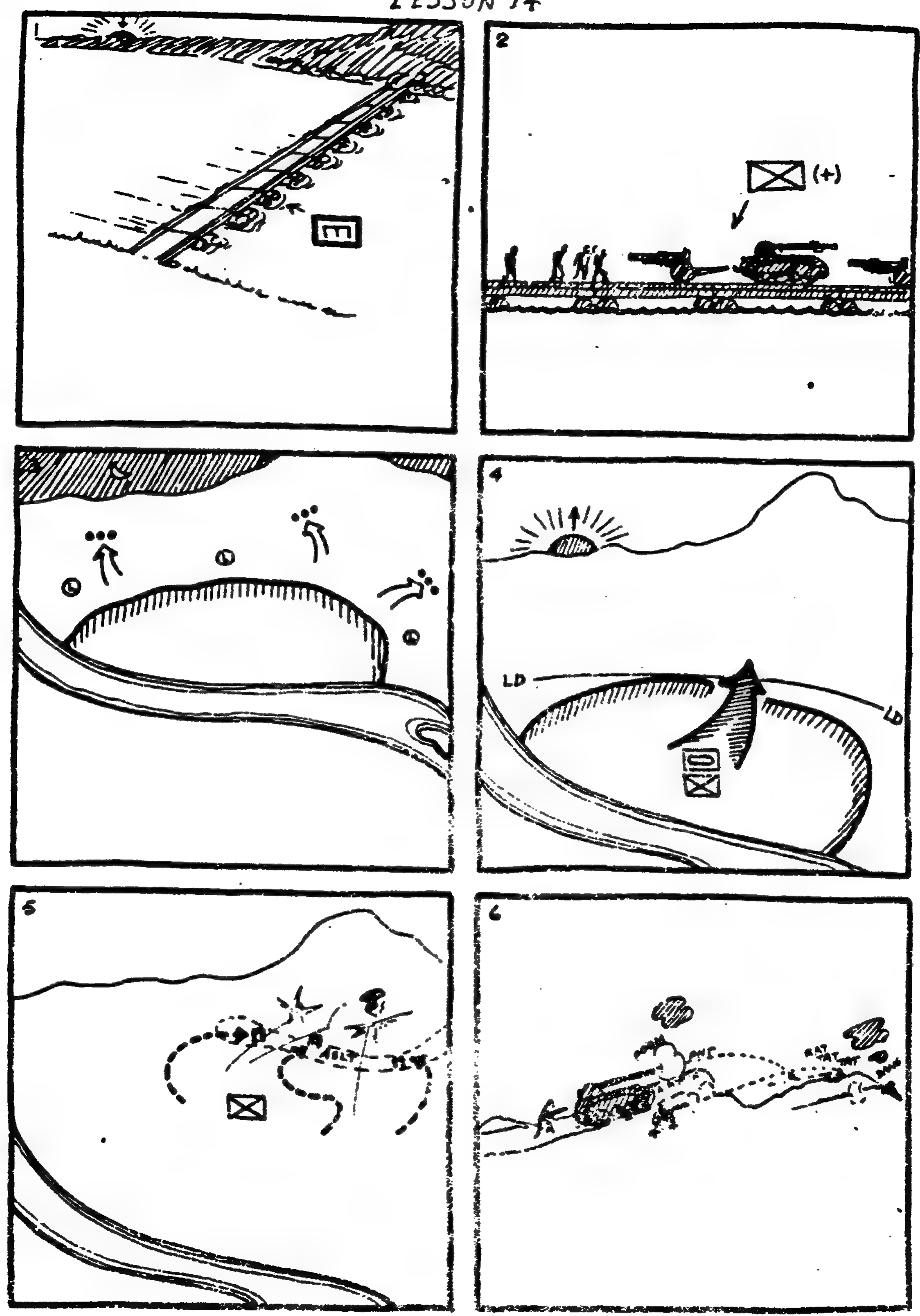
我軍tô河成功，後續梯隊即前進增援一連士兵抵達一良好衝-fung準備位置，利用衝fung射擊，進入敵軍陣地，所以能接近敵人，將敵人消滅，有等地方，需施用p'ân火器p'ân射敵人砲眼，以迫敵人投降。

敵人雖喪失不少陣地，傷亡重大，仍思向我軍反攻，但我軍英勇作戰，將其擊退，我軍擴張橋頭pó，建立堅固陣地，準備作全面大規模攻擊。

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Details
累	Character Number 642 · Radical Number 102 · Stroke Number 11 · 田
勇	Character Number 1499 · Radical Number 19 · Stroke Number 9 · 力
喪	Character Number 1046 · Radical Number 30 · Stroke Number 12 · 口
遮	Character Number 45 · Radical Number 162 · Stroke Number 15 · 辶，辵
羞	Character Number 916 · Radical Number 123 · Stroke Number 11 · ⺷，羊

LESSON 14



LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan keî shî chún-peî ts'uēn-mîn taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik?

Taàp: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik t'ai-tuî* chìm-lîng k'iū-t'aū-pô chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû chún-peî ts'uēn-mîn taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik.

M: Haî faàt-tûng taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik kôh maăn, ngŏh-teî kè kung-ping foô-chaàk pin chúng kung-tsòk?

T: Haî faàt-tûng taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik kôh maăn, ngŏh-teî kè kung-ping ì-king kà-chôh tô hōh kè faū-k'iū.

M: Kà-chôh faū-k'iū chi-haû, ngŏh-teî p'aaì pin chúng pô-tuî* tô hōh huì tsang-oōn kung-kik t'ai-tuî*?

T: Ngŏh-teî p'aaì chìn-ch'e t'ūng p'aaù-ping tô hōh huì tsang-oōn kung-kik t'ai-tuî*.

M: Tîm-kaaî iù tseung chìn-ch'e t'ūng p'aaù-ping pô-tuî* p'ooì-shûk peî pô-ping pô-tuî*?

T: Waî chîk-tsìp chi-oōn heî-kìn, shôh-ĭ tseung k'uĭ-teî p'ooì-sûk peî pô-ping pô-tuî*.

M: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ hāng-tûng?

T: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan ch'ìt-lâp ts'ìm-t'ìng-shaaù, yaû p'aaì ch'ut ch'ik-haû huì saū-shôk tîk-yān t'ūng fōng-chî k'uĭ-teî tsô kung-sž waâk-chê ka-k'eūng kung-sž.

M: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan chún-peî mi-yĕ?

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Maăn-t'aû-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan yat-fong-mìn kìng-kaaì tìk-yăn kè t'au-tsaâp, yat-fong-mìn chún-peì t'ing-yât chiu-t'aû-tsó kè kung-kik.

M: Chiu-t'aû-tsó kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan p'aaì mi-yĕ pô-tuì* huì kung-kik?

T: Chiu-t'aû-tsó kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan p'aaì pô-ping t'ûng chìn-ch'e pô-tuì* t'ung-kwŏh kung-kik-ch'ut-faât-sìn, k'uĭ-teì hoi-ch'ì kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh-teì kè pô-tuì* tìm-yeûng* kung-kik?

T: K'uĭ-teì yûng fôh-lìk t'ûng wân-tûng huì kung-kik, tsik-haì yûng chìn-ch'e kè fôh-lìk huì ìm-oô pô-ping kè wân-tûng.

M: Pô-ping chìm-lĭng-chôh yat-kŏh mi-yĕ kè waì-chì?

T: Pô-ping chìm-lĭng-chôh yat-kŏh ch'ung-fung chún-peì waì-chì.

M: K'uĭ-teì chìm-lĭng-chôh ch'ung-fung chún-peì waì-chì chi-haû, tsaû tìm-yeûng* â?

T: K'uĭ-teì chìm-lĭng-chôh ch'ung-fung chún-peì waì-chì chi-haû, tsaû yûng ch'ung-fung shê-kik t'ûng-tìk-yăn tsŏk kân-shan chìn-taû.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: When did our troops plan to get the big attack into full swing?

Answer: After our attacking echelon occupied the bridgehead, we planned to launch the big attack in full swing.

Q: On the evening when the large scale attack was launched, for what kind of work were our engineers responsible?

A: On the evening when the large scale attack was launched, our engineers had already set up the pontoon bridge for river-crossing.

Q: After the pontoon bridge was set up, what units did we send across the river to reinforce the attacking echelon?

A: We sent tanks and artillery pieces across the river to reinforce the attacking echelon.

Q: Why did we have to have tanks and artillery pieces attached to the infantry units?

A: For the sake of direct support, we had them attached to the infantry units.

Q: During the night, what action did we take?

A: During the night, we established listening posts, and sent out patrols to search for the enemy, and to prevent them from digging in or strengthening their fortifications.

Q: What did we prepare during the night?

A: During the night, we provided security against the enemy's sneak attack, and in the mean time prepared for the attack to take place the next morning.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: In the morning, what units did we send out for the attack?

A: In the morning, we sent infantry units and tank units across the line of departure to initiate the attack.

Q: How did our units initiate the attack?

A: They initiated the attack by employing fire and maneuver. That is they employed tank fire to cover the maneuver of the infantry.

Q: What position has the infantry occupied?

A: The infantry has occupied an assault position.

Q: What did they do after occupying the assault position?

A: After they occupied an assault position, they used assault fire to engage in close combat with the enemy.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You are my best friend and I certainly will support you.
2. If you do not comply with my instruction , I will report you to your superior directly.
3. We occupied that aristrip since March of last year.
4. How can you build a pontoon bridge across the river of this width with only a handful of pontoon boats?
5. To set up a bridge is a job for the engineers.
6. Although she does not like the idea, she can do nothing but to comply.
7. The enemy had already strengthened their navy and air force.
8. What is the advantage of using a rifle in close combat?
9. Go directly to the line of departure. Perhaps you may catch up with your unit.
10. The headquarters ordered the guards to maintain security at all times. and to report anything that is unusual.
11. Do not rush. You have plenty of time.
12. She is attached to the hospital as an army nurse.
13. The enemy set up a number of listening posts along the front.
14. This is a full scale attack and I am waiting to hear the news of victory.
15. On one hand I attend college but on the other I work part of the time.
16. The army will teach you the techniques of close combat.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1. chi-oŏn — to support; support
2. chîk-tsìp — direct
3. chìm-lĭng — to occupy (place)
4. faŭ-k'iŭ — pontoon bridge
5. kà — to set up (bridge)
6. ka-k'eŭng — to strengthen
7. kân-shan chìn-taù (kân chìn) — close combat
8. kîng-kaaì — security; to watch
9. kung-kik ch'ut-faàt sìn — line of departure
10. p'ooì-shûk — to attach to
11. ts'îm-t'ìng-shaaù — listening post
12. ts'uĕn-mîn — full swing, full scale
13. waî... heì-kìn — for the sake of...

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

847

瓶 p'Ing: pitcher; jar; jug; vase.

花瓶 fa-p'Ing: a vase.

酒瓶 tsaú p'Ing: wine jar.

14

策 ch'aåk: to plan, scheme

計策 kaî-ch'aåk: a plan, a scheme

策劃 ch'aåk-waåk: to plan.

323

兇 hung: violent; malevolent; savage

兇惡 hung-ðk: wicked; malignant

兇手 hung-shaú: the murderer

兇猛 hung-maăng: fierce

瓶 策 兇

瓶 策 兇

瓶 策 兇

61

倡 Ch'eung: a leader· to promote

倡議 ch'eung-Y: to make a motion, to propose (an idea).

倡亂 ch'eung-luên: to lead an insurrection.

1182

朵 tóh, teú: a bunch: a cluster; a (flower).

一朵花 yat tóh fa: a stem of flower, a flower.

耳朵 Y-tóh: lobe of the ear.

倡 朵

倡 朵

倡 朵 朵

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

752

毅 ngaî: resolute; enduring.

毅力 ngaî-lik: perseverance; grit.

毅然 ngaî-în: resolutely; determined.

767

尿 niû: urine.

尿缸 niû kong: jar for public convenience; urinal.

糖尿病 t'ông-niû-pâng: diabetes.

802

霸 pà: to rule by force; tyrannise; to intimidate

霸佔 pà-chìm: encroach.

霸王 pà-vông: a tyrant.

毅 尿 霸

毅 尿 霸

毅 尿 霸 霸

1070

斯 sz: this; these; any.

斯文 sz-mûn: elegant; refined.

斯時 sz shî: at this time.

1118

騰 t'ĕng: mount; to rise; to leap; to gallop.

騰躍 t'ĕng yeûk: to leap; to gallop

斯 騰

斯 騰

斯 騰

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

策動大規模攻擊之晚上，工兵已完成 tö 河 fau 橋。戰車與砲兵即趕快過河增援攻擊梯隊。為直接支援起見，此等戰車與砲兵被配屬於步兵部隊。

是晚入黑之後，我軍設立潛聽 shaau，又派出 ch'ik-候搜索敵人，及防止敵人做工事。

朝早，步兵同戰車通過攻擊出發線，立即開始攻擊。火力同運動，雙方並進。步兵進行神速，不久即佔領一個良好衝鋒準備位置；即由此利用衝鋒射擊，與敵人作近身戰鬥。

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

瓶

Character Number 847 Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 98 瓦

策

Character Number 14 Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 118 ⺮，竹

兇

Character Number 323 Stroke Number 6
Radical Number 10 儿

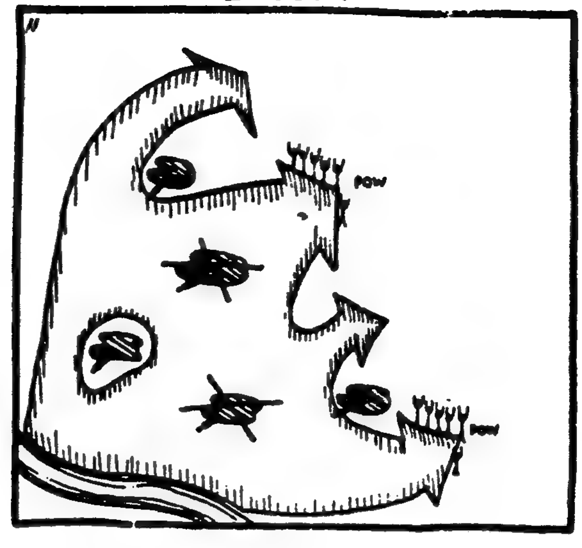
倡

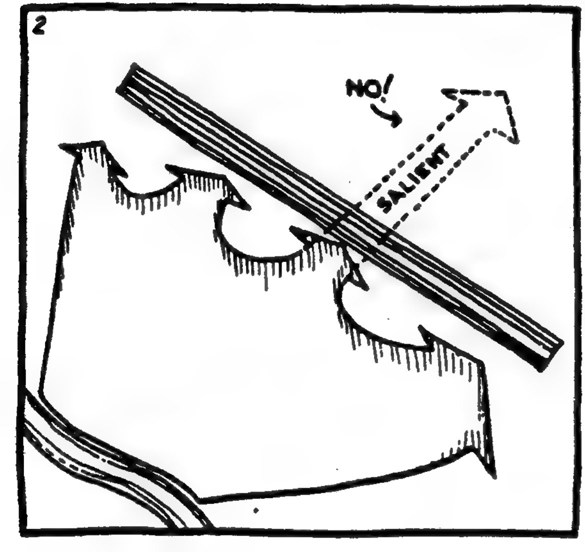
Character Number 61 Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 9 亻，人

朶

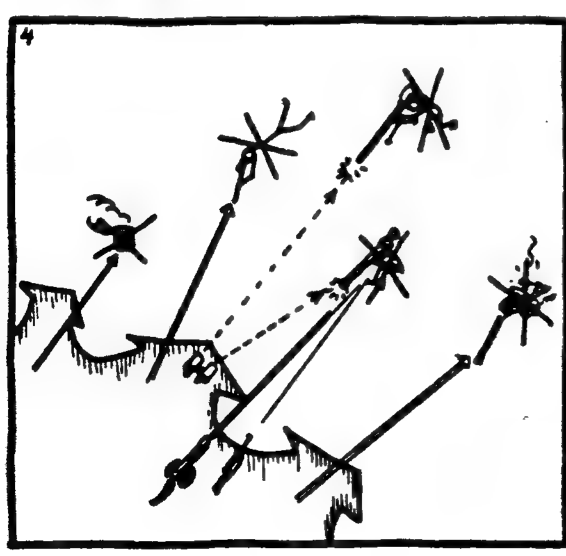
Character Number 1182 Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 75 木

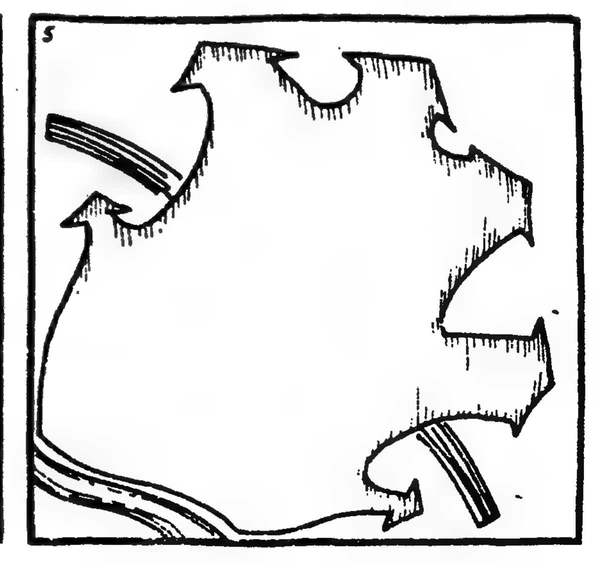

LESSON 15




NO!
SALIENT


C.R.





LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî t'ùng tîk-yăn tsòk kân-shan chìn-taù chi-haû, tsuì haû tîk-yăn tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Tsuì haû, shóh-yaŭ tîk-yăn chân-teî kè taî-k'òng-ch'aaŭ to peî siu-mît, waâk-chê peî ch'iu-uêt.

M: Tîk kwan taî-k'òng mō-haaû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk kwan taî-k'òng mō-haaû chi-haû, tîk kwan ch'ìt-t'uì; ngŏh kwan foo-wôk hó toh tîk-yăn.

M: Tîk-yăn ch'ìt-t'uì chi-haû, ngŏh-kwan tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan heùng ts'ìn chui-kik, sham yâp tîk-yăn kè lĭng-t'ó.

M: Ngŏh kwan sham yâp tîk-yăn lĭng-t'ó kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan tîm-kaaî iù kòm siú-sam?

T: Ngŏh kwan hó siú-sam, yan-waî ngŏh-teî m-seúng lĭng chân-teî tât-ch'ut.

M: Ngŏh kwan chî-fai-shóh yîk-to tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan chî-fai-shóh yîk-to kan-chuê ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* heùng ts'ìn t'ui-tsùn.

M: Tîk-yăn yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt hin-chaì ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

T: Tîk-yân yûng tsóh-kik-ping, chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù, t'ùng fà-hôk chìn tâng-tâng paân-faàt, hin-chaì ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* tuì-foô tîk kwan kè fà-hôk ping-heì?

T: Ngŏh kwan chung-wōh tîk kwan kè fà-hôk ping-heì.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'òh-waaî tîk kwan kè mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'òh-waaî k'uĭ-teî kè chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tîk-yàn kè mi-yě peî ngŏh-teî t'aî-kìn?

T: Tîk-yàn kè mō-tsôh-lîk p'aaù t'ùng fôh-tsìn p'aaù kè p'aaù-haû-îm peî ngŏh kwan t'aî-kìn.

M: K'uî-teî kè p'aaù-waî* peî ngŏh kwan kè mi-yě p'ôh-waaî?

T: K'uî-teî kè p'aaù-waî* peî ngŏh kwan pô-ping p'aaù-ping kè fôh-lîk p'ôh-waaî.

M: Ngŏh kwan kung-kik kè kìt-kwôh tìm yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik hô shìng-kung, pìn shìng tât-p'ôh.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we had engaged in close combat with the enemy, what did the enemy finally do?

Answer: Finally all pockets of resistance of the enemy's position were cleaned out or by-passed.

Q: When the enemy's resistance became futile, what did they do?

A: After the enemy's resistance became futile, they evacuated. We captured a large number of the enemy.

Q: After the enemy withdrew, what did we do?

A: We pursued the enemy, and penetrated into the enemy's territory.

Q: When we penetrated into the enemy's territory, why did we have to be so careful?

A: We were very careful because we did not want to form a salient at our position.

Q: What did our command post do?

A: Our command post followed our units and pushed forward.

Q: What method did the enemy employ to contain our attack?

A: The enemy employed snipers, antitank guns, and chemical warfare, etc., to contain our attack.

Q: How did we face the enemy's chemical weapons?

A: Our force neutralized the enemy's chemical weapons.

Q: What did we destroy that belonged to the enemy?

A: We destroyed their antitank guns.

Q: What did we see that belonged to the enemy?

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The muzzle flashes of the enemy's recoilless rifles and rocket launchers were spotted by our force.

Q: By what were their gun positions destroyed?

A: Their gun positions were destroyed by the fire of our infantry and artillery.

Q: What was the result of our attack?

A: Our attack was successful and became a break-through.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Your unit will advance from the right and mine will push forward from the left.
2. With whom are you going to consult about the matter?
3. The enemy broke through our defense, but we are not going to retreat.
4. Because of the lack of ammunition, our resistance becomes futile.
5. To form a salient at this time is too dangerous.
6. When we withdraw from this area, we will leave one hundred men to form a pocket of resistance.
7. The muzzle flash was seen miles away last night.
8. From the various intelligence reports, we may be able to figure out all the gun positions of the enemy.
9. The restaurant has become our headquarters recently.
10. They pushed forward ten miles last night, but they retreated twenty miles this morning.
11. The attacking echelon by-passed the enemy's mine-field and obstacles.
12. Shall we pursue the retreating enemy or clean out all the pockets of resistance first?
13. What would you do in case of chemical warfare?
14. Do you know of any way to neutralize the chemical weapons used by the enemy?

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. We have no chance to make a breakthrough without food and ammunition.

16. If our troops push forward too rapidly, we will be in a dangerous position.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù	antitank gun
2.	ch'ìt-t'uì	to retreat, withdraw
3.	ch'iu-uêt	to by-pass
4.	chui-kik	to pursue
5.	chung-wōh	to neutralize
6.	fà-hôk chìn	chemical warfare
7.	heùng ts'ìn t'ui-tsùn	to push forward
8.	p'aaù-haù-îm	muzzle flash
9.	p'aaù-waî*	gun position
10.	pìn shìng	to become
11.	siu-mît	to annihilate, destroy
12.	taì-k'òng-ch'aaù	pocket of resistance
13.	taì-k'òng mō-haaû	resistance becomes futile
14.	tâ-ch'ut	salient
15.	tât-p'òh	to break-through; break-through
16.	tuì-foô	to face
17.	t'ui-tsùn	to push, advance
18.	saì-kw'ăn*	germ; bacteria

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

58

涨 cheùng: to flood; over flow

水漲 shuí cheùng: the water rises

1119

突 tât: to rush out; to offend; suddenly.

突然 tât-ìn: suddenly; without warning

突出 tât-ch'ut: to project.

1361

洞 tûng: to see through; to perceive; a cave; cavity.

洞悉 tûng sik: to know thoroughly.

山洞 shaan tûng: a cave; cavern.

漲 涨 突 洞

漲 突 洞

涨 突 峒 洞

561

菌 kw'án: mushroom; fungus; mold.

地菌 teì kw'án: mushroom.

微菌 meī-kw'án: germs.

細菌 shaì-kw'án: bateria.

1120

糾 taú: to correct; to examine; to connect; to join; to combine; to associate.

糾正 taú-chìng: to correct.

糾紛 taú-fan: complication.

菌 糾

菌 糾

菌 糾

READING MATERIAL

308

筐 hong: an open basket; a couch

竹筐 chuk hong: bamboo basket

筐床 hong-ch'ōng: a square couch

567

顆 kw'ŏh: a kernel; cl of small things as pearls, etc.; also of trees

一顆樹 yat kw'ŏh shuê: one tree.

930

耍 shá: to sport; to play.

玩耍 waān shá: to play.

遊耍 yaū shá. to stroll.

筐 顆 耍

筐 顆 耍

筐 顆 耍

1482

讓 yeūng: to give away; to yield; to resign.

讓位 yeūng-waī: to give place, to abdicate

退讓 t'uì-yeūng: to yield; to retire.

1411

挖 waāt: to excavate; to dig; to scoop up; to gouge.

挖井 waāt tséng: to dig a well.

讓 挖

讓 挖

讓 挖

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

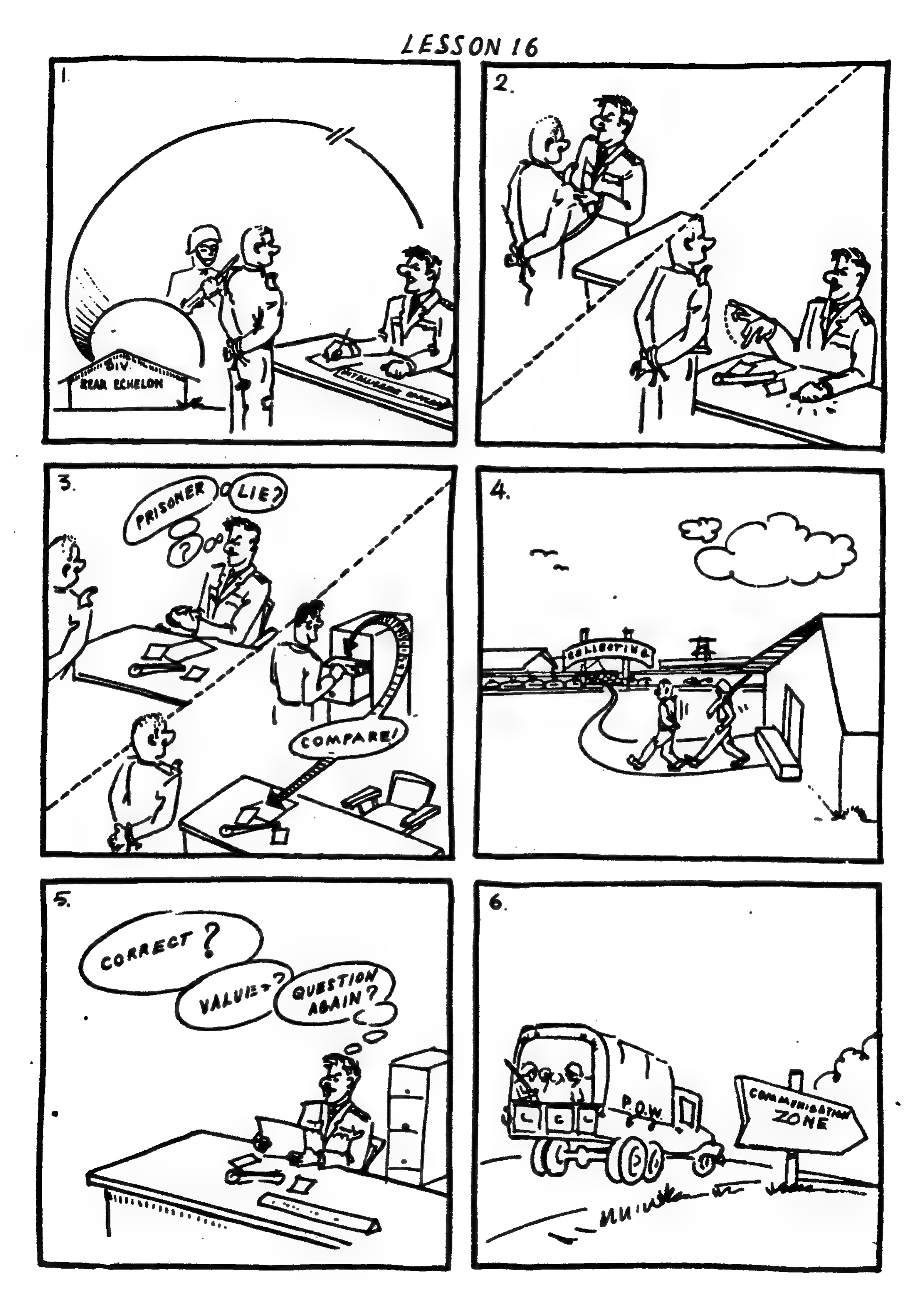
最後所有敵人陣地之抵抗 ch'aan 均被消滅，或被超越。我軍 foo-lð 敵人甚多。我軍深入敵人領土，但進行極為小心，不想令陣地突出。

我軍指揮所向前推進。敵人仍作困獸之鬥。出盡方法與兵器，如戰車防禦砲，化學兵器，欲牽制我軍攻擊。所未用者，祇是細菌與 hat 械而已。我軍中和敵軍之化學兵器，又破壞敵軍之戰車防禦砲。

敵人之無後座力砲，與及火箭砲之砲口 im 為我軍發現，即被我軍步砲兵之火力破壞。我軍攻擊成功，變成突破。

WRITING MATERIAL

漲	Character Number 58	Stroke Number 14	Radical Number 85	氵, 水				
突	Character Number 1119	Stroke Number 9	Radical Number 116	穴				
洞	Character Number 1361	Stroke Number 9	Radical Number 85	氵, 水				
菌	Character Number 561	Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 140	艹, 艸				
糾	Character Number 1120	Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 120	糸, 糸				


LESSON 16
1.
DIV.
REAR ECHELON
2.
3.
PRISONER
LIE?
?
COMPARE!
4.
COLLECTING
5.
CORRECT ?
VALUE?
QUESTION AGAIN?
6.
P.O.W.
COMMUNICATION ZONE

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî foo-lŏ-chŏh tîk-yīn chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* ch'uê-leî k'uî-teî â?

Taâp: Ngŏh-teî tseung kŏh ti chîn-foo aât faan huî haû-fong kè sz-lîng-pô.

M: Ngŏh teî tîm-kaaî iù sùn-mân chîn-foo?

T: Waî tak-tô shŏh iù kè chûng-iù ts'îng-pò hei-kîn, ts'îng-pò-koon haî sz kè haû-fong-t'ai-tuî* sùn-mân chîn-foo.

M: Meî sùn-mân chîn-foo chi-ts'în, ts'îng-pò-koon ying-koi tsô ti mi-yĕ?

T: Meî sùn-mân chîn-foo chi-ts'în, ts'îng-pò-koon sin iù saû-ch'ā chîn-foo kè ts'uēn shan, t'ai-hă yaŭ mŏ mān-kîn*.

M: Tuî-ue kŏh ti mān-kîn*, ts'îng-pò-koon ying-koi tîm-yeûng* ch'uê-leî?

T: Tuî-ue kŏh ti mān-kîn*, ts'îng-pò-koon ying-koi ts'eūng-saî shâm-ch'ā.

M: Ts'îng-pò-koon ts'eūng-saî shâm-ch'ā-chŏh kŏh ti mān-kîn* chi-haû, ts'îng-pò-koon ying-koi tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ts'îng-pò-koon kan-kuî mān-kîn*, sùn-mân chîn-foo yaŭ-kwaan kè ts'îng-pò.

M: Ts'îng-pò-koon sùn-mân-chŏh ni kŏh chîn-foo chi-haû, uē-kwŏh k'uî waaî-î foo-lŏ kŏng taaî-wâ, k'uî ying-koi tîm-yeûng*?

T: ts'îng-pò-koon ying-koi tseung foo-lŏ kè haû-kung t'ūng taî-î shuè kè ts'îng-pò pei-kaaù yat-hă, t'ai-hă k'uî kè ts'îng-pò hŏh-k'aaù m-hŏh-k'aaù.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Chìn-foo king-kwòh sùn-mân chi-haû, tsaû peî taaì huì pin shuè?

T: Chìn-foo king-kwòh sùn-mân chi-haû, yaû waì-ping taaì k'uĭ faan huì chìn-foo tsaâp-chung-ch'uè.

M: Uē-kwóh ni kòh chìn-foo kóng kè ts'ìng-pò yaû chìng-k'òk yaû yaŭ kà-chîk, tsaû iù tìm-yeûng* ne?

T: Uē-kwóh k'uĭ kóng kè ts'ìng-pò yaû chìng-k'òk yaû yaŭ kà-chîk, tsaû iù tsoì mân k'uĭ.

M: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì chìn-foo kè ts'ìng-pò laì tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì chìn-foo kè ts'ìng-pò laì tsô tîk ts'ìng kè p'oòn-tuèn, hóh-ĭ uê-ch'ak tîk-yān kè tsòk-chìn kaì-waâk.

M: Tsuì-haû ngŏh-teî tseung shóh yaŭ kè chìn-foo to taaì huì pin shuè?

T: Tsuì-haû shóh yaŭ kè chìn-foo to peî waì-ping taaì huì kaau-t'ung k'ui kè chìn-foo kaam-kàm-shóh.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we had captured the enemy soldiers, how did we handle them?

Answer: We had those prisoners-of-war sent back to the rear headquarters.

Q: Why did we have to interrogate the prisoners-of-war?

A: For the purpose of securing important information which we needed, the intelligence officer interrogated the prisoners-of-war at the rear echelon of the division.

Q: What should an intelligence officer do before he interrogates a prisoner-of-war?

A: Before interrogating the prisoner-of-war, the intelligence officer should first search the prisoner-of-war to see if he possesses any papers.

Q: How should the intelligence officer handle those papers?

A: The intelligence officer should examine those papers thorougly.

Q: Upon thoroughly examining those papers, what should the intelligence officer do?

A: The intelligence officer, on the basis of those documents, questions the prisoner of war regarding information relating to the documents.

Q: After questioning the prisoner-of-war, should the intelligence officer suspect that the prisoner-of-war has lied, what should he do?

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The intelligence officer should have the prisoner-of-war's testimony compared with the information secured from other sources, to see whether the information was reliable.

Q: After the prisoner-of-war has been questioned, to where is he sent?

A: After the prisoner-of-war has been questioned, he is sent under guard back to the prisoner-of-war collecting point.

Q: If the information which the prisoner-of-war gave was correct and valuable, what should we do?

A: If the information which he gave was correct and valuable, it was necessary to question him again.

Q: What did we do with the information which the prisoner-of-war gave?

A: We, on the basis of the information, worked out the estimate of the enemy's situation. This enables us to predict the enemy's operation plan.

Q: Eventually, to where did we send all the prisoners-of-war?

A: Eventually, all the prisoners-of-war were sent under guard to the prisoner-of-war enclosure in the communication zone.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Your information is most valuable to our government.
2. Guards! Take this man to the POW collecting point.
3. The testimony seems convincing, but I still have some doubts.
4. I suspect that she is not a nurse but an enemy agent.
5. He makes promises which he cannot keep.
6. Please bring him to my office as soon as he finishes eating.
7. After the medical examination, you will be interrogated.
8. Did you get any valuable information from the interrogation?
9. You may guard the gate while I search this floor.
10. How can you evaluate this document if you do not understand it.
11. These are important government papers. Please keep them in a safe place.
12. The communication zone is about fifteen miles over the other side of the river.
13. She is the most reliable courier I've known. You can trust her.
14. I will handle this as soon as I finish eating. So don't worry.
15. The rear echelon is stationed approximately five miles south of our unit.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. They send the POW to headquarters under heavy guard.

17. Do you think you can manage this matter without me?

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	aàt faan huì	to send to... under guard
2.	chìn-foo	prisoner of war
3.	chìn-foo kaam-kàm-shôh	prisoner of war enclosure (or compound)
4.	chìn-foo tsaâp-chung-ch'uê	prisoner of war collecting point
5.	chìng-k'ȍk	correct
6.	ch'ué-leĭ	to manage, handle
7.	haû-fong t'ai-tuî*	rear echelon
8.	haŭ-kung	testimony
9.	mān-kîn*	document, paper
10.	shâm-ch'ā	to evaluate, examine
11.	saŭ-ch'ā	to search
12.	sŭn-mân	to interrogate; interrogation
13.	uê-ch'ak	to predict, foresee, forecast
14.	waaī-ī	to suspect, doubt
15.	waî-ping	guard
16.	yaŭ kà-chîk	valuable

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

365

摇 iū: to shake; move; agitate

摇船 iū shuān: to row a boat

摇動 iū-tûng: to shake; oscillate

摇擺 iū-paaí: swaggering

招摇 chiu-iū: trouble making; show off

999

涉 shìp: to concern; to wade.

干涉 kon-shìp: to involve; to interfere; to implicate.

交涉 kaau-shìp: to negotiate with.

225

複 fuk: double; to repeat

複雜 fuk-tsaáp: complicate

重複 ch'ùng-fuk: to duplicate; double

摇 涉 複

摇 涉 複

摇 涉 複

860

騙 p'ìn: to cheat; to swindle; to defraud.

受騙 shaû p'ìn: to be cheated.

騙局 p'ìn kûk: plan for swindle; swindle set-up

1082

貸 t'aaì: lend (on interest).

借貸 tsè-t'aaì: to lend money.

騙 貸

騙 貸

騙 贷

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1266

焦 tsiu: scorched; dried up; anxious.

焦點 tsiu-tím: focus.

焦慮 tsiu-luí: anxious; worrying thought.

1153

丢 tiu: to throw away; to cast down; to lose.

丢開 tiu hoi: to put aside; not to mention.

丢去 tiu huì: to throw away.

丢棄 tiu hei: to reject; to throw away.

708

磨 mŏh: to grind; to sharpen; to rub; to polish.

磨刀 mŏh to: to grind a knife.

磨利 mŏh-leí: to sharpen.

磨練 mŏh-lín: to work at; to learn by experience; to discipline.

磨房 mŏh-fŏng: a mill.

焦 丢 磨

焦 丢 磨

焦 丢 磨

1023

純 shŭn: sincere; pure; unmixed; uniform.

純熟 shŭn-shŭk: tame.

純正 shŭn-ching: upright.

1437

蝗 wŏng: locust.

蝗虫 wŏng-ch'ŭng: common locust.

純 蝗

純 蝗

純 蝗

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

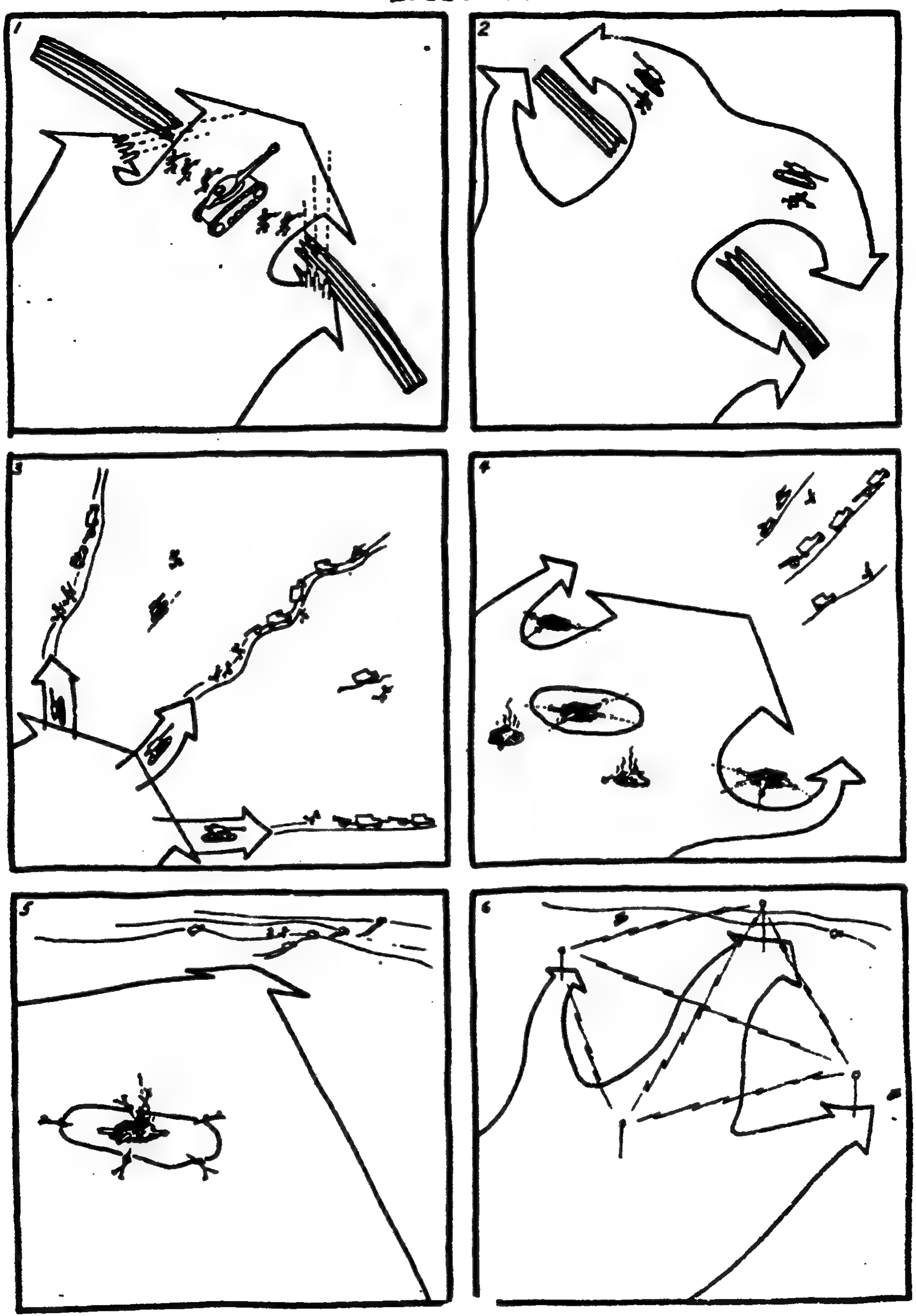
為得到所需之重要情報起見,師部情報官即在後方梯隊訊問捕獲之戰foo.情報官先命伺戰-foo 身上 sau查,如sau 得文件,將文件詳細shām- 查,如發現文件與戰事有關,即向戰-foo 訊問以求獲得有價值之情報.

情報官訊問之後,如懷疑戰-foo 講大話,則將第二處所得之情報互相比較,看其情報是否可靠.然後由衛兵帶戰-foo 回foo - 18 集中處.

如所講之情報不祇正確,且有價值,即再詳細追問.最後,所有戰 -foo 均由衛兵帶往交通區之戰 -foo 監禁所.

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Details
搖	Character Number 365 Radical Number 64 Stroke Number 13 扌, 手
涉	Character Number 999 Radical Number 85 Stroke Number 10 氵, 水
複	Character Number 225 Radical Number 145 Stroke Number 14 衤, 衣
騙	Character Number 860 Radical Number 187 Stroke Number 19 馬
貸	Character Number 1082 Radical Number 154 Stroke Number 12 貝


1
2
3
4
5
6

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì kòk fong-mîn kè ts'ìng-pò, tuì tîk ts'ìng hâ-chóh p'oòn-tuèn chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì yaû kòk fong-mîn tak-tò* kè ts'ìng-pò, tuì tîk ts'ìng hâ-chóh p'oòn-tuèn chi-haû, k'uèt-tîng kung-kik kè kai-waàk.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'ì tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn yik-waâk chak-mîn kung-kik?

T: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'ì tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kung-kik.

M: K'uî-teî tîm-yeûng* tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kè kung-kik?

T: K'uî-teî tsaàp-chung fóh-lìk, hìp-t'ûng pô-ping t'ûng chìn-ch'e tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kung-kik.

M: K'uî-teî tât-p'òh-chóh tîk-yān kè pin t'iû fōng-sìn?

T: K'uî-teî tât-p'òh-chóh tîk-yān kè chuè-iû-taì-k'òng-sìn.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping t'ûng chong-kaàp pô-tuì* yûng mi-yĕ chìn-shût?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping t'ûng chong-kaàp pô-tuì* yûng ue-oòì wân-tûng, k'uî-teî leûng-yîk paau-waì tîk-yān.

M: Tîk-yān peî ngŏh kwan paau-waî chi-haû, tîk-yān tsaû seûng tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān peî ngŏh kwan paau-waì chi-haû, tsaû seûng t'uèt-leì chìn-ch'eûng, k'uî-teì kón-faaì haû-t'uì keì ying-leî.

M: Tîk-yān haû-t'uì kè shî-haû, ngŏh kwan yûng mi-yĕ pô-tuì* chui-kik tîk-yān?

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng kei-haaî-fà pô-tuî* chui-kik tîk-yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî tîm-yeûng* chui-kik tîk-yān?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî yat-lō p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè kaán-taan kung-sż.

M: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān tîm-yeûng* taî-k'òng?

T: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān kè taî-k'òng-ch'aaū waān-k'eūng taî-k'òng.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû tîm-yeûng* huî suk-ts'ing tîk-yān?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû ch'iu-uêt chui-kik tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk, yaū tâk-chûng pô-tuî* huî suk-ts'ing k'uî-teî.

M: Chui-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan kòk taan-waî* tîm-yeûng* t'ūng poón-tuî t'ung-sùn?

T: Chui-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan kòk taan-waî* yûng mō-sīn-tīn t'ūng poón-tuî t'ung-sùn.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we, on the basis of the information from various sources, had worked out the estimate of the enemy situation, what did we do?

Answer: After we, on the basis of the informations secured from various source had worked out the estimate of the enemy situation, we decided the plan of attack.

Q: Did we launch a frontal attack or flanking attack against the enemy this time?

A: We made a frontal attack against the enemy this time.

Q: How did we make a frontal attack against the enemy?

A: By massing fires and coordinating the infantry with tanks, we made a frontal attack against the enemy.

Q: Which enemy's defense line did our force break through?

A: They broke through the enemy's main line of resistance.

Q: What kind of tactics did our infantry and armored elements adopt?

A: Our infantry and armored elements made a turning movement. Our force encircled the enemy from two flanks (double-envelopment).

Q: After the enemy had been surrounded by our force, what did the enemy attempt to do?

A: After the enemy had been surrounded by our force, they attempted to disengage from the battlefield. They retreated in a hurry for several miles.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: When the enemy retreated, what kind of units did we employ to pursue the enemy?

A: We employed the mechanized units to pursue the enemy.

Q: How did our pursuit column pursue the enemy?

A: Our pursuit column destroyed the hasty fortifications of the enemy all along the route.

Q: How did some of the enemy resist?

A: Some of the enemy's pockets of resistance resisted stubbornly.

Q: How did our force mop up the enemy?

A: Our force pursued the enemy's main force by by-passing, and let special troops mop them up.

Q: At the time of pursuit, how did various units of our force communicate with the main body?

A: At the time of pursuit, various units of our force communicated with the main body by radio.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I ran all the way home, and I am still afraid.
2. She is stubborn and seldom changes her opinion about him.
3. With reinforcement from headquarters, we can employ a turning movement to outflank the emeny's units.
4. A special column of armored units will be here soon.
5. He was disengaged from the battle-field.
6. The main body will arrive two hours later.
7. Our group was encircled by the enemy, but we made a break-through at night.
8. Tell me where is your main force and who is the commanding officer.
9. You can do it because you are young and able.
10. These simple field fortifications are not satisfactory. You have to set them up again within an hour for another inspection.
11. Our main line of resistance is very strong and will be able to withstand any attack.
12. Have you decided to bypass the enemy or attack them from the flanks?
13. The armored unit came here in a hurry last night.
14. We tried a frontal attack but failed.
15. The enemy keep their main force behind the armored unit.
16. We broke through the enemy's MLR with tanks and armored units.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	chak-mîn kung-kik (chak-yîk kung-kik)	flanking attack
2.	chìng-mîn kung-kik	frontal attack
3.	chong-kaàp pô-tuî*	armored unit
4.	chuê-iù taī-k'òng-sìn	FEBA
5.	chuê-lîk	main force
6.	fōng-sìn	defense line
7.	kaán-taan kung-sẑ	simple fieldworks (hasty defense)
8.	leŭng-yîk paau-waī	double envelopment
9.	poón-tuî	main body
10.	suk-ts'ing	to mop up
11.	tâk-chúng	special
12.	tsung-tuî	column
13.	t'uèt-leī chìn-ch'eūng	to disengage from battlefield
14.	ue-ooī	to outflank
15.	ue-ooī wân-tûng	turning movement
16.	waān-k'eūng	stubborn

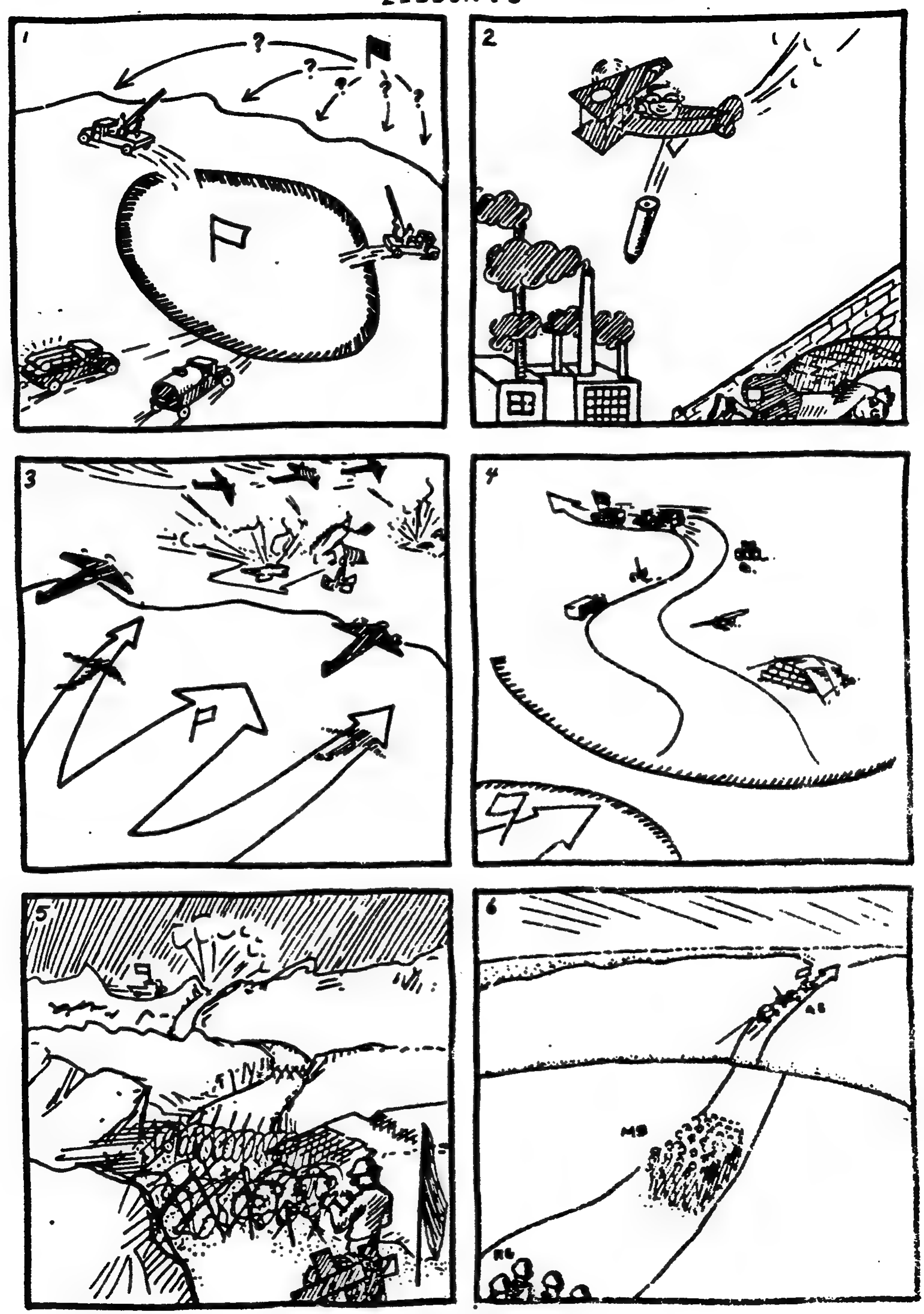
LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

我軍集中火力，協同步兵與戰車作正面攻擊，突破敵人之主要抵抗線，步兵與裝甲部隊用 ue-ooi 運動，兩面包圍敵人。

敵人想脫離戰場，即趕快後退數英里，但我軍用機械化部隊追擊敵人，追擊 tsung 隊將敵人之簡單工事，盡行破壞，有等敵人據抵抗巢頑強抵抗，我軍超越，追擊敵人之主力，衹由特種部隊擔任將此等頑抗敵兵肅清，追擊之時，我軍各單位均用無線電與本隊通訊。

LESSON 18



LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan tîm-kaaî tsaâm-shî t'îng-chî chui-kik?

Taâp: Yan-waî ngŏh kwan iû pô-ch'ung în-liû* t'ũng taân*-yeûk, shôh-ĭ tsaâm-shî t'îng-chî chui-kik.

M: Ngŏh kwan pô-ch'ung în-liû* t'ũng taân*-yeûk kè shî-haû, tîm-yeûng* fŏng-chî tîk-yān k'eî-tsaâp?

T: Ngŏh kwan pô-ch'ung în-liû* t'ũng taân*yeûk kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî ch'ît-lâp kei-tûng fŏng-uê chân-teî, fŏng-chî tîk-yān k'eî-tsaâp.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'aaî-ch'ut fei-kei huî kwang-châ tîk-yān kè pin shuê?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'aaî-ch'ut fei-kei huî kwang-châ tîk-yān kè kung-îp chung-sam.

M: Hung-tsaâp kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

T: Hung-tsaâp kè mûk-tik haî tâ-kik tîk-yān kè sẑ-heî.

M: Yaŭ ti fei-kei îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî*?

T: Yaŭ ti fei-kei îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî kè chak-yîk.

M: Yaŭ ti fei-kei p'ôh-waaî tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ?

T: Yaŭ ti fei-kei p'ôh-waaî tîk-yān kè fei-kei-ch'eũng.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè fei-kei tîm-kaaî iû p'ôh-waaî tîk-yān kè fei-kei-ch'eũng?

T: Yan-waî ngŏh-teî iû fŏng-chî tîk-yān fei-kei heî-fei kung-kik ngŏh kwan kè sin-t'aũ pô-tuî*.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tîk-yān haû-t'uì kè shì-haû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān haû-t'uì kè shì-haû, uēn lô waì-heì hó toh chong-peî.

M: Yaŭ ti teî-fong tîk-yān tîm-yeûng* chôh-chuê ngŏh kwan ts'în-tsùn?

T: Yaŭ ti teî-fong k'uì-teî ch'ìt-lâp tô-lô-cheùng-ngoî chôh-chuê ngŏh kwan ts'în-tsùn.

M: Ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* tuì-foô ni ti cheùng-ngoî-mât?

T: Yaŭ ti cheùng-ngoî-mât peî ngŏh-teì kè kung-ping p'òh-waaî; yaŭ ti cheùng-ngoî-mât peî ngŏh-teî kè p'aaù-ping p'òh-waaî-chôh.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè sin-t'aû pô-tuî* t'ui-tsùn-tak hó faaì, shôh-ì poôn tuî t'ûng haû-waî tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè sin-t'aû pô-tuî* t'ui-tsùn-tak hó faaì, shôh-ì poôn tuî t'ûng haû-waî to kôn-m-sheûng.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Why did our force temporarily cease to pursue?

Answer: We temporarily ceased the pursuit, because our force had to re-supply with fuel and ammunition.

Q: At the time of the resupplying of fuel and ammunition, how did we prevent the enemy's surprise attack.

A: At the time of the resupplying of fuel and ammunition, our force set up a mobile defensive position to prevent the enemy's surprise attack.

Q: Which enemy's places were bombed by our airplanes?

A: We sent airplanes to bomb the enemy's industrial center.

Q: What is the purpose of the air raid?

A: The purpose of the air raid is to demoralize the enemy.

Q: Which of our units were covered by some of the airplanes?

A: Some of the airplanes covered the flanks of our pursuing column.

Q: What was destroyed by some of the airplanes?

A: Some of the planes destroyed the enemy's airfields.

Q: Why did we have to destroy the enemy's airfields?

A: Because we had to prevent the enemy's planes from taking off to attack the advancing elements of our forces.

Q: When the enemy retreated, what did they do?

A: When the enemy retreated, they abandoned much equipment along the retreating route.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did some of the enemy block our forces' advance?

A: On some locations, they set up road blocks to block our force from advancing.

Q. How did our force face these road blocks?

A: Some of these barriers were destroyed by our engineers, and some of them were destroyed by our artillery.

Q: Since our advancing elements pushed on so fast, what happened to the main body and the rear guard?

A: Our advancing elements pushed on very fast, so the main body and the rear guard could not keep up.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do not abandon any equipment. This is an order.
2. The police sets up road blocks along the highway to stop automobiles for inspection.
3. Stop your car and come out with your hands up.
4. This is a blow to all of us and we are really sorry.
5. The advance element of the main body will set up a defense along this river.
6. Where can we get our fuels and ammunitions?
7. This industrial center was completely destroyed by war.
8. I cannot keep up with the new techniques in medicine.
9. Rear guard is just as important.
10. Mobile defense should be set up without too much trouble.
11. Your car is blocking the driveway of my garage.
12. You must get all these obstacles out of my way immediately.
13. Capt. Wōng is in charge of the advance party and Major Lee, the rear guard.
14. Do not stop unless I tell you to.
15. We have to drive through those barriers.
16. I don't think we can keep up with the mobile unit at such a speed.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1. chak-yîk — flank
2. haû-waî — rear guard
3. kei-tûng fõng-uê (laû-tûng fõng-uê) — mobile defense
4. kôn m̃-sheũng — cannot keep up
5. kung-îp chung-sam — industrial center
6. pô-ch'ung — to resupply, replace
7. sin-t'aũ pô-tuî* — advance element, forward echelon
8. tå-kik — to blow
9. tô-lô cheùng-ngoî — road block
10. waî-heî — to abandon

LESSON 18

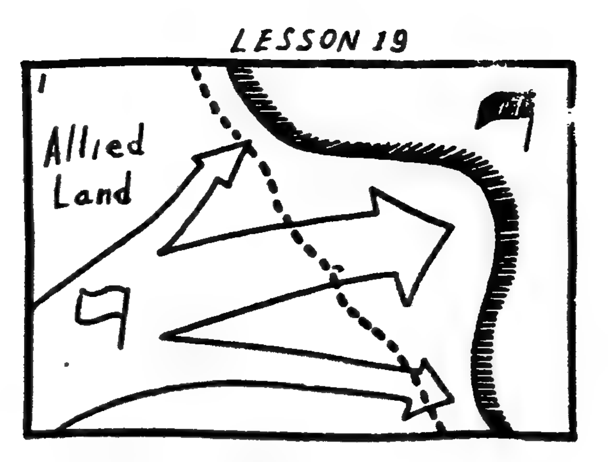
READING MATERIAL

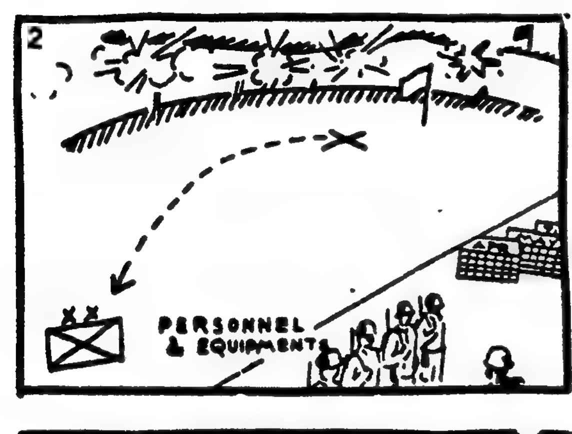
我軍因補充in-料與彈藥,暫時停止追擊
補充之時,設立機動防禦陣地防止敵人奇
tsaâp

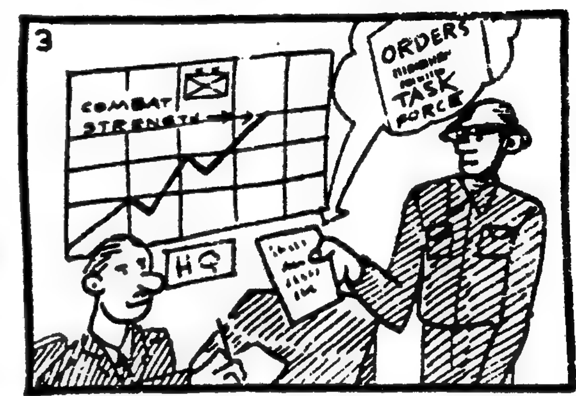
同時空軍轟炸敵人之工業中心,以空
tsaâp 打擊敵人之士氣.有等飛機掩護追擊
chung 隊之 tsak yik .有等飛機則破壞敵人
之飛機場,防止敵人飛機攻擊我軍之先頭部
隊.

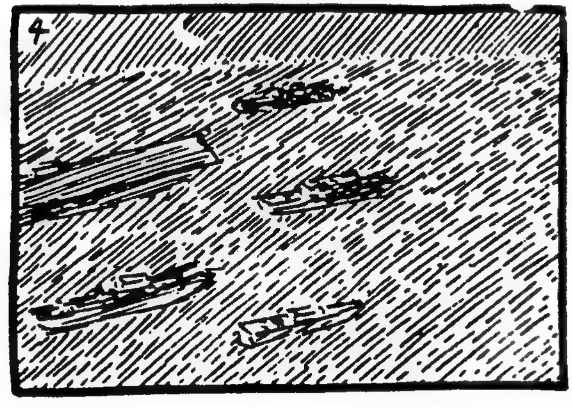
敵人向後敗退,沿路丟棄裝備甚多.在地
方設立道路 cheung 礙希望阻我軍前進.但盡
被我軍毀壞.我軍先頭部隊推進極快,所以本
隊與及後衛亦追趕不及.進軍之神速,可想而
知.

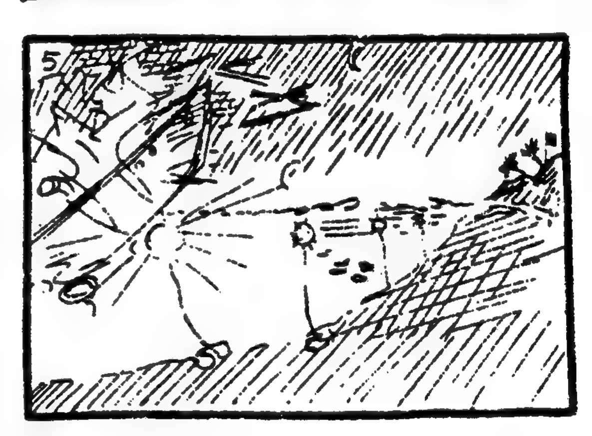
LESSON 19


1
Allied
Land

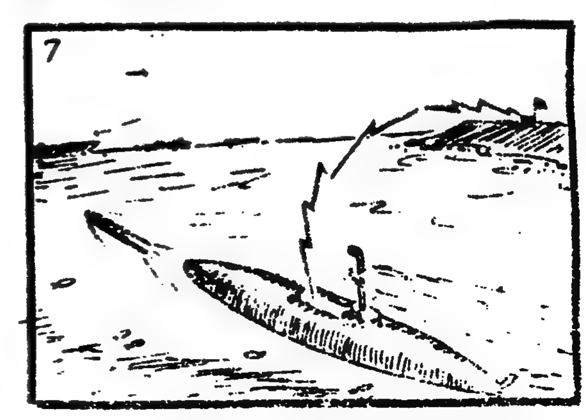

2
PERSONNEL
& EQUIPMENT


3
COMBAT
STRENGTH
HQ
ORDERS
TASK
FORCE


4


5


6


7

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yăn haî pin-shuè peî ngŏh kwan kik-t'uì?

Taàp: Tîk-yăn haî măng-kwòk lìng-t'ô peî ngŏh kwan kik-t'uì.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh sz tiû huì pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh sz tiû huì haû-fong.

M: K'uĭ-teî tìm-kaaî iù tiû huì haû-fong ne?

T: Yan-waî k'uĭ-teî iù pô-ch'ung yăn-uĕn t'ŭng chong-peî, yaû iù tsoì fàn-lìn keì kòh uêt.

M: King-kwòh saam-kòh uêt kè pô-ch'ung t'ŭng fàn-lìn chi-haû, ì-ka ni kòh sz tìm-yeûng*?

T: Ī-ka ni kòh sz ì-king fooi-fûk ch'ung-tsuk kè chìn-taù lìk.

M: Ni kòh sz tak-tò* mi-yĕ kè mìng-lìng?

T: Ni kòh sz fûng mìng huì ts'aam-ka yat-chi p'aaì-hìn kwan.

M: Ni chi p'aaì-hìn kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ shât-lìk?

T: Ni chi p'aaì-hìn kwan yaŭ hŏng-hung mŏ-laâm, chìn-taù laâm, ts'ŭn-yeŭng laâm, t'ŭng k'eì-t'a laâm t'ĕng.

M: P'aaì-hìn kwan keî shì ch'ut-faàt?

T: P'aaì-hìn kwan maăn-t'aŭ-haak ch'ut-faàt.

M: K'uĭ-teî tìm-kaaî iù shât-hăng tang-fôh koôn-chaì?

T: K'uĭ-teî shât-hăng tang-fôh koôn-chaì, peî-mìn tìk-yăn t'aaì tsô faàt-în.

M: K'uĭ-teî tsìp-kân tìk-yăn hoì-ngôn kè shì-haû, yat-chèk kwan-laâm chông-tô mi-yĕ?

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: K'uī-teî tsìp-kân tîk-yān hoî-ngôn kè shī-haû, yat-chèk kwan-laâm chông-tô faū-luī ch'ām-chôh.

M: Ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* huī kaù-heî shaang-waān kè yān?

T: Ngŏh-teî yûng kaù-shang-t'ĕng t'ūng chîk-shing-kei tâng-tâng huī kaù-heî shaang-waān kè yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè laâm-t'ĕng peî tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ t'aî-kìn?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè laâm-t'ĕng peî tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng t'aî-kìn.

M: Tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng tîm-yeûng* tuī-foô ngŏh kwan?

T: Tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng yûng mō-sìn-tìn t'ung-chi kei-teî, t'ūng-shī faàt-shê uē-luī kung-kik ngŏh kwan laâm-t'ĕng.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Where was the enemy repulsed by our force?

Answer: The enemy was repulsed by our force in the territory of an Allied country.

Q: To where was one of our divisions transferred?

A: One of our divisions was transferred to the rear.

Q: Why did they have to be transferred to the rear?

A: They had to replace the personnel and equipment and to retrain for a few months.

Q: After having gone through a three months replacement and training period, how is this division now?

A: This division has already regained full combat strength.

Q: What kind of order did this division receive?

A: This division was ordered to take part in a task force.

Q: What does the task force strength include?

A: This task force has aircraft carriers, battle ships, cruisers, and other vessels.

Q: When did the task force put out to sea?

A: The task force put out to sea at night.

Q: Why did they have to take blackout measures?

A: They took the blackout measures to avoid being discovered too early by the enemy.

Q: As they approached the enemy shore, what did one of the ships hit?

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: As they approached the enemy shore, one of the ships hit a floating mine and was sunk.

Q: How did we rescue the survivors?

A: We employed life-boats and helicopters to rescue the survivors.

Q: What unit of the enemy sighted our vessels?

A: Our vessels were being sighted by an enemy submarines.

Q: How did the enemy submarine deal with our task force?

A: The enemy submarine informed the base by radio and at the same time, discharged torpedoes to attack our vessels.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This helicopter can carry only fifty persons with a speed of 65 mph.
2. I was driving along the highway and suddenly something hit my car from behind.
3. Do you have sufficient funds to buy a bus ticket to L.A?
4. He discovered a new method of detecting mines.
5. When they fire at you, aren't you afraid?
6. Let us be careful when we are near the shore because there are many floating mines.
7. The doctor told me that you will soon regain your strength.
8. Two days ago I was ordered to go to the headquarters.
9. The river is full of floating mines and other obstacles.
10. She was ordered by the doctor to drink two glasses of milk during each meal.
11. Generally, lifeboats are used for rescue operation.
12. It is a magnificent sight to see a warship sailing on the high sea.
13. The task force of the Allied countries will be ready for action within a week.
14. The woman was rescued from the ocean by a sailor.
15. The expeditionary force will carry out the order immediately.
16. How many survivors did you see?
17. The enemy's strength is formidable. Don't underestimate them.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

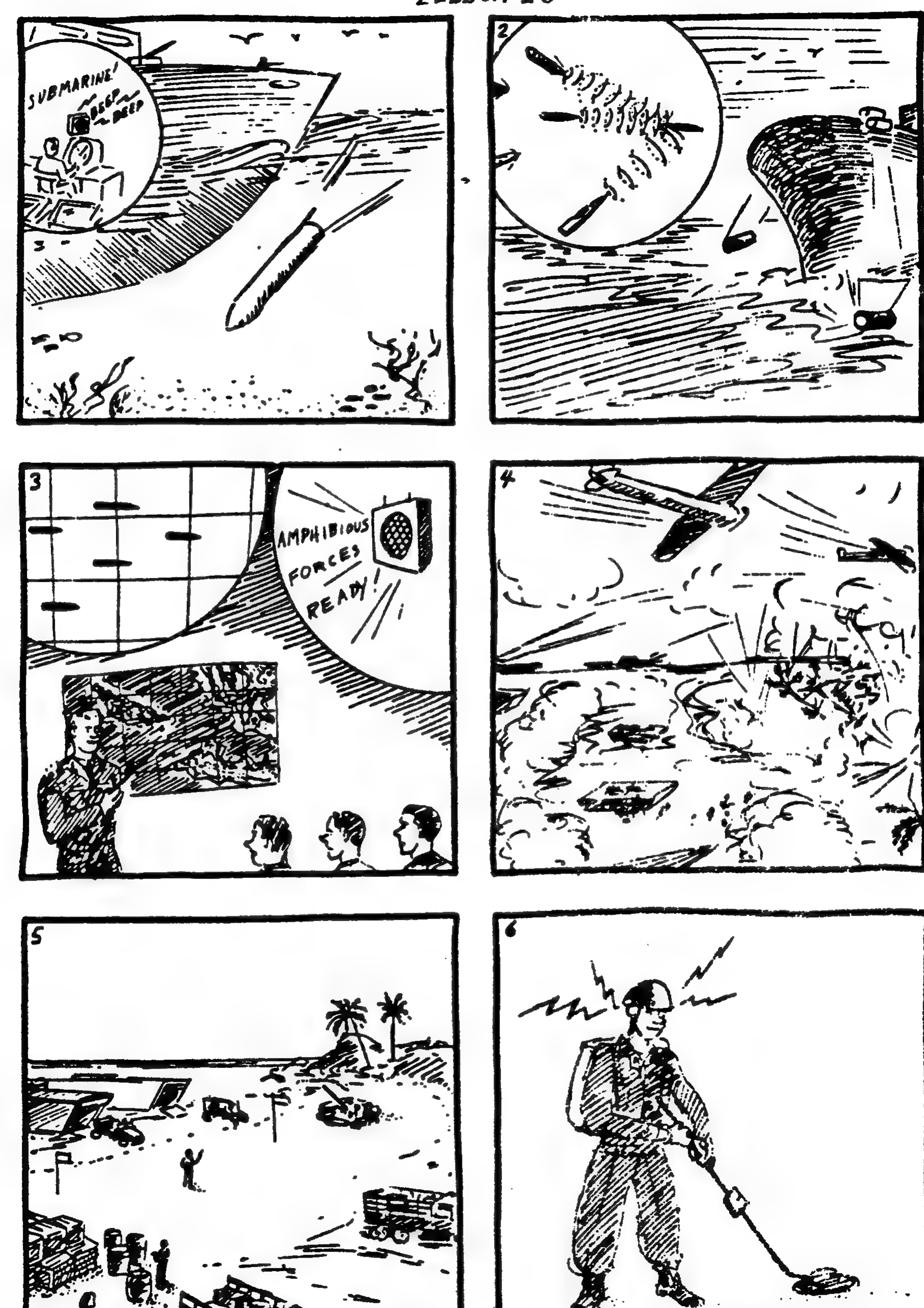
1.	chîk-shing-kei	helicopter
2.	ch'ung-tsuk	full, sufficient
3.	faàt-shê	to discharge (fire), shoot
4.	faū-luî	floating mine
5.	fûng mîng	to be ordered
6.	kaù-shaang-t'ĕng	lifeboat
7.	kwan-laâm	warship
8.	māng-kwòk	Allied countries
9.	p'aaî-hîn kwan (tâk-hîn pô-tuî*)	task force
10.	peî kaù-heî	to be rescued
11.	shang-waān kè yān	survivor
12.	shât-hāng	to carry out
13.	uēn-ching kwan	expeditionary force
14.	kûk-pô chìn-chaang	limited war; local war
15.	ts'uēn-mîn chìn-chaang	general war

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

敵人在 mang 國領土被我軍擊敗，此僅是局部戰爭，但此次戰事，為全面戰爭戰事散佈各地，因此我軍一個師調回後方補充人員與裝備，再訓練數月，此時此師已 fooi- 復充足戰鬥力，又被選派參加一支派 hin 軍，遠征別處。

此支軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦 t'eng，於某日晚黑出發海上，各船艦實行燈火管制，避免敵人太早發現，可惜當接近敵人海岸之時，一隻軍艦撞 fan 雷沉沒，生還之人均被救起，一隻敵人潛水 t'eng 發現我軍，用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦 t'eng.


1
SUBMARINE!
BEEP
BEEP
2
3
AMPHIBIOUS
FORCES
READY!
4
5
6

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān kê ts'îm-shuî-t'ĕng faȁt-shê uē-luî chi-haû, yaŭ mŏ tâ-chùng mûk-piu?

Taȁp: Mŏ, tîk-yān kè ts'îm-shuî-t'ĕng faȁt-shê uē-luî chi-haû, mŏ tâ-chùng mûk-piu.

M: Ngŏh kwan faȁt-în tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan faȁt-în tîk-yān kè ts'îm-shuî-t'ĕng.

M: Ngŏh kwan faȁt-în-chôh tîk-yān kè ts'îm-shuî-t'ĕng chi-haû, tsaû p'aaî mi-yĕ tò ni kòh k'ui-wîk?

T: Ngŏh kwan faȁt-în-chôh tîk-yān kè ts'îm-shuî-t'ĕng chi-haû, tsaû p'aaî k'ui-chûk laâm kón-tò ni kòh k'ui-wîk.

M: Ngŏh kwan kè k'ui-chûk laâm tîm-yeûng* saú-shòk t'ūng chà ch'ām tîk-yān kè ts'îm-t'ĕng?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè k'ui-chûk laâm yûng so-nā saú-shòk tîk-yān kè ts'îm-t'ĕng, tâm sham-shuî chà-taân* chà ch'ām k'uî.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè p'aaî-hîn kwan huî-tò pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè p'aaî-hîn kwan huî-tò tang-lûk kè mûk-tik teî.

M: P'aaî-hîn kwan huî-tò mûk-tik teî chi-haû, ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî* uê-peî tang-lûk.

T: Ngŏh-teî kè shuî-lûk-leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî* uê-peî tang-lûk.

M: P'aaî-hîn kwan kè sz-lîng-koon tîm-yeûng* chî-shî kòk taan-waî* tsòk-chîn?

T: P'aaî-hîn kwan sz-lîng-koon yûng hung-chung chiù-seùng* chî shî kòk taan-waî* tsòk-chîn.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan yûng mi-yĕ ìm-oô ngŏh-teì kè pô-tuì*?

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng foó-ch'ung kwang-chà-kei t'ûng hoì-kwan p'aaù ìm-oô ngŏh-teì kè pô-tuì*.

M: Ngŏh-teì taì-yat lûn kè tang-lûk pô-tuì* yûng mi-yĕ wân-shue kung-kuì tang-lûk?

T: Ngŏh-teì taì-yat lûn kè tang-lûk pô-tuì* ts'ŏh t'aán-haak tang-lûk-t'ĕng tang-lûk, k'uĭ-teì tang-lûk shìng-kung.

M: Tang-lûk chi-haû, k'uĭ-teì kìn-lâp mi-yĕ chân-teì?

T: Tang-lûk chi-haû, k'uĭ-teì kìn-lâp t'aan-t'aû chân-teì, yaû tang-lûk chì-fai-koon chì-fai, k'uĭ-teì hoi-ch'ì kw'ông-taaì t'aan-t'aû chân-teì.

M: T'ui-tsùn kè shì-haû, k'uĭ-teì tìm-yeûng* saú-shòk teì-luì?

T: T'ui-tsùn kè shì-haû, k'uĭ-teì yûng teì-luì saú-shòk-heì saú-shòk teì-luì.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Did the torpedoes discharged from the enemy submarine hit the target?

Answer: No, the torpedoes discharged from the enemy submarine missed the target.

Q: What did we discover of the enemy?

A: We discovered the enemy's submarine.

Q: After we discovered the enemy submarine, what did we send to this area?

A: After we discovered the enemy submarine, we rushed destroyers to this area.

Q: How did our destroyers locate and sink the enemy submarine?

A: Our destroyers used sonar to locate the enemy submarine and dropped depth charges to sink it.

Q: Where did our task force arrive?

A: Our task force reached the destination for landing.

Q: After the task force reached the destination, which unit of ours was ready to land?

A: Our amphibious force was ready for landing.

Q: How did the commanding general of the task force orient the various units in the operation?

A: The commanding general of the task force used aerial photographs to orient the various units in the operation.

Q: What did we use to cover our units?

A: We used dive bombers and naval guns to cover our units.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What means of transportation did the first wave of our landing force use in the landing?

A: Our first wave of the landing force was landed by landing ship tanks (L.S.T.). They landed successfully.

Q: After the landing, what position did they set up?

A: After the landing, they set up a beachhead, commanded by the beachmaster. They began to expand the beachhead.

Q: When they pushed on, how did they locate mines?

A: When they pushed on, they used mine detectors to locate mines.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Our dive bombers bombed and sank two enemy submarines and four battleships last week.
2. The ferry is the only means of transportation to that island.
3. Using sonar, we can locate submarines even though they remain stationary under water.
4. Mine detectors and sonars are very valuable equipments.
5. The beachmaster's order is to establish the beachhead at any cost.
6. After you have thrown the grenade, be sure to take cover.
7. Our first wave of men had landed and established a beachhead.
8. The enemy set up many obstacles along the beach when they withdrew to the peninsula.
9. To navigate a LST is not as simple as driving an automobile.
10. This high school will be expanded to accommodate more students.
11. Our coastal artillery shelled and sank two enemy destroyers and a few other ships.
12. Aerial photograph of enemy's situation can be very useful to our intelligence.
13. The enemy's guns are not as powerful as our artillery but their aim is very accurate.
14. The beach is quiet and beautiful with a full moon above.
15. Ducks can be used on land and water.
16. Please do not drop your thing on the floor.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	foó-ch'ung kwang-chà-kei	dive bomber
2.	hoî-t'aan	beach
3.	hung-chung chiû-seûng*	aerial photograph
4.	kik ch'ām	to sink (by shelling)
5.	kw'òng-taaî	to expand
6.	saú-sók	to locate, search for
7.	so-nā	sonar
8.	t'aân-hak tang-lûk-t'ĕng	landing ship tank (LST)
9.	t'aan-t'aū	beach
10.	t'aan-t'aū chân-teî (t'aan-t'aū-pó)	beach head
11.	taî-yat lūn	the first wave
12.	tang-lûk chî-fai-koon (t'aan-k'ān tuî-cheúng)	beachmaster
13.	teî-luî saú-sòk-heî	mine detector
14.	ts'īm-t'ĕng	submarine
15.	wân-shue kung-kuî	means of transportation (transportation tool)
16.	chà ch'ām	to bomb and sink

LESSON 20

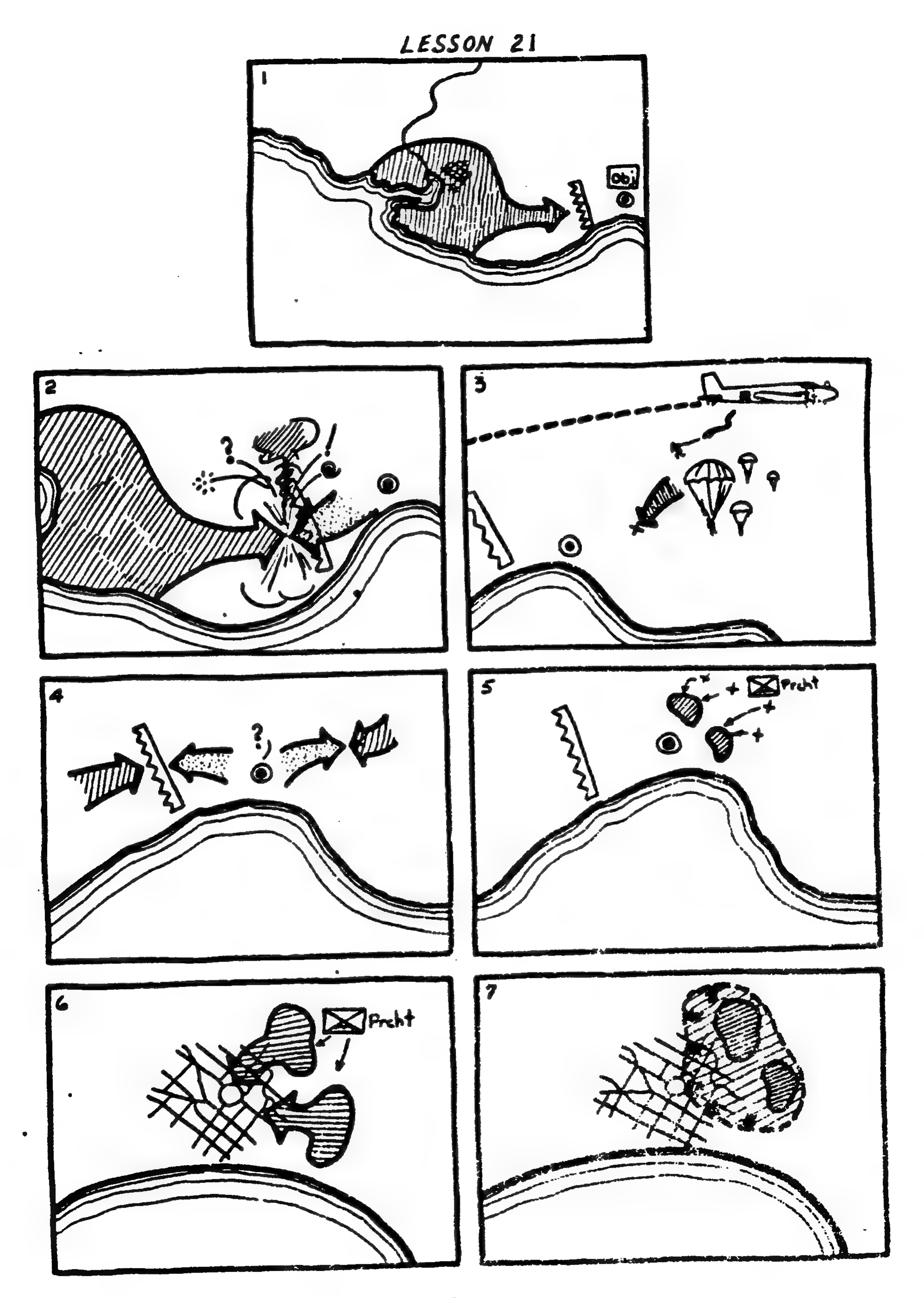
READING MATERIAL

敵人之魚雷未打中目標.潛水艇被我軍發現,我軍驅逐艦即趕到此處海面.用蘇拿搜索潛-t'ěng,投深水炸彈將其炸沉.

派-hsin 軍到達目的地.水陸兩-ts'ai 部隊預備登陸.派-nin 軍司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰.於fob- 衝轟炸機與海軍砲火 in 護之下,第一輪登陸部隊坐 t'ank 克登陸 t'ěng 登陸.

登陸成功.建立 t'aan 頭陣地,由登陸指揮官指揮.開始擴大 t'aan 頭陣地.推進之時,用地雷搜索器搜索敵人預埋之地雷.

LESSON 21



LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan tang-lûk chi-haû, kaì-tsûk heùng pin shuè tsùn-kung?

Taàp: Ngŏh kwan tang-lûk chi-haû, kaì-tsûk heùng tîk-yān kè hoì-ngôn kè yat-kòh iù-tîm tsùn-kung.

M: Ngŏh kwan tsùn-kung kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan tsùn-kung kè mûk-tik haî seúng chìm-lĭng kóng-haú foô-kân kè yat-kòh shìng-shĭ.

M: Ngŏh-teî tîm-kaaî iù chìm-lĭng ni kòh shìng-shĭ?

T: Yan-waî ni kòh shìng-shĭ haî kaau-t'ung kè shue-naú t'ūng chìn-leûk sheûng kè chûng chàn.

M: Tîk-yān haî ni kòh shìng-shĭ yaŭ mŏ wĭng-kaú fŏng-uê kung-sž?

T: Yaŭ, tîk-yān haî ni kòh shìng-shĭ yaŭ wĭng-kaú fŏng-uê kung-sž.

M: Ngŏh kwan ts'oì-yûng mi-yĕ chìn-shût huì kung-p'òh ni kòh shìng?

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng taaî ue-ooĭ chìn-shût huì kung-kik tîk-yān kè haû-fong, yat-fong mîn fan-saàn tîk-yān kè ping-lîk, lìng yat-fong-mîn ts'ìn-haû kaàp-kung tîk-yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* ue-ooĭ tò tîk-yān kè haû-fong?

T: Ngŏh-teî p'aaì-ch'ut kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî*, yûng wân-shue-kei haî tîk-yān kè haû-fong kòng-lôk.

M: Haî kóm-yeûng* kè yìng-saì chi-hâ, tîk-yān tîm-yeûng*?

T: Haî kóm-yeûng* kè yìng-saì chi-hâ, tîk-yān iù leŭng-mîn tsòk-chìn, ts'ìn-haû shaû-tsaàp.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan kè kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kòng-lôk chi-haû, tsaû tìm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kòng-lôk chi-haû, tsaû làp-tsik koì-p'in, shìng-waì yaŭ-tsô-tsik kè pô-tui*.

M: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kw'aì-taaì mi-yĕ kè mŏ-heì, yaŭ mi-yĕ chong-peì?

T: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kw'aì-taaì hing-pìn kè mŏ-heì, t'ŭng kaàn-taan kè chong-peì. K'uì-teì yûng chì-naàm-cham laì yìng-shik fong-heùng, yûng pô-hàng-kei t'ŭng kòk pô-tuì* luĕn-lòk. K'uì-teì yaû yûng chìk-shing-fei-kei wân-sùng sheung-ping.

M: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kòng-lôk chi-haû, kung-kik mi-yĕ teì-fong?

T: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuì* kung-kik kôh kôh shìng-shĭ kè chuê-iù kaau-t'ung chung-sam, t'ŭng shâp-tsĕ lô-haû; k'uì-teì t'ŭng-shì kw'òng-taaì hung-kòng teì-k'ui (hung-t'aŭ-pô).

LESSON 21

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After our force launched the landing, where did we continue to attack?

Answer: After our force launched the landing, we continued to attack a stronghold along the enemy coast.

Q: What was the objective of our attack?

A: The objective of our attack was to capture a city which is located in the vicinity of the port.

Q: Why was it necessary for our force to capture this city?

A: Because this city is the pivot of communication, and an important strategic stronghold.

Q: Was there any permanent fortification in this city?

A: Yes, there was permanent fortification in this city.

Q: What tactics did we use to attack and sieze this city?

A: We employed outflanking tactics to attack the rear of the enemy and to divert the enemy strength. In the meantime we attacked the enemy from both the front and rear.

Q: How did we outflank and reach the rear of the enemy?

A: My means of transport planes, we sent out paratroops to land at the enemy's rear.

Q: Under such a situation, what happened to the enemy?

A: Under such situation, the enemy had to fight at both fronts and to face the attack at the front and rear.

Q: After our paratroops landed, what did they do?

LESSON 21

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: After our paratroops landed, they immediately reorganized themselves, forming a well-organized unit.

Q: What weapons did the paratroops carry, and what equipment did they have?

A: The paratroops carried light weapons, and simple equipment. They used a compass for the recognition of direction, and communicated with various units by walkie-talkies. They also employed helicopters to deliver the wounded.

Q: After the paratroops landed, where did they attack?

A: The paratroops attacked the main traffic center and road intersections of that city. In the mean time they expanded the airhead.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. We will attack the enemy from the front and rear.
2. If permanent fortifications are not set up along this river, we may face the enemy's attack from the front and rear.
3. I hope you will adopt my suggestion.
4. We will have to reorganize our units immediately.
5. At dawn, your unit will attack the enemy's stronghold, and my unit will guard this key point.
6. Do you think you can capture that city by tomorrow night?
7. After we have set up the airhead ten miles behind enemy line, they will have to fight on two fronts.
8. Tell me your rank. Give me the approximate strength of your unit.
9. Walkie-talkies can be used effectively within a certain radius.
10. What are you going to do if they employ outflanking movement?
11. Are you sure this is the pivot point of enemy communication?
12. May I borrow your pistol?
13. Do not employ any diversionary tactics at this time.
14. The capture of the enemy's strategic point was the key to secure victory.
15. Take this walkie-talkie with you on patrol and keep us informed of the enemy's movement.
16. How are you going to recognize your units?

LESSON 21

WORD LIST

1.	chûng chàn	stronghold, important city
2.	fan-saàn	to divert (diversionary action)
3.	hing-pîn	light and convenient
4.	hung-kòng teî-k'ui (hung-t'aū-pó)	airhead
5.	koî-p'in	to reorganize
6.	kung p'òh	to attack and capture (place)
7.	leūng-mîn tsòk-chìn	to fight at two fronts
8.	pô-haāng-kei (shaū-t'aî mō-sìn tîn-wâ*)	walkie-talkie
9.	shue-naū	pivot (place)
10.	taaî ue-ooî	outflanking
11.	ts'în-haû kaàp-kung	to attack the enemy from the front and rear
12.	ts'în-haû shaû-tsaàp	to face the attack from the front and rear
13.	wīng-kaū fōng-uê kung-sê	permanent fortification
14.	yîng-shaî	situation, condition, circumstance

LESSON 21

READING MATERIAL

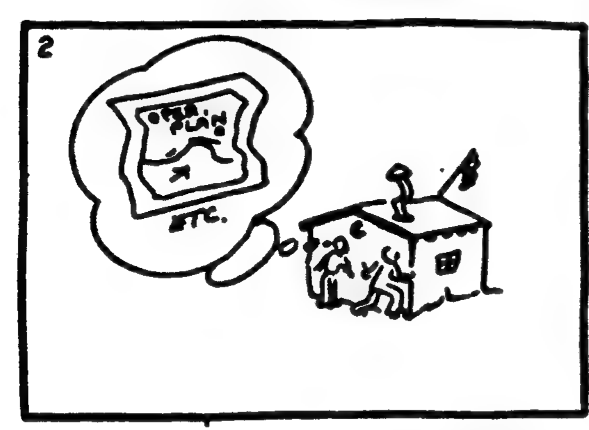
我軍部隊登陸之後，繼續向敵人海岸某一要點攻擊，想佔領港口附近一個城市，但敵人頑強抵抗。

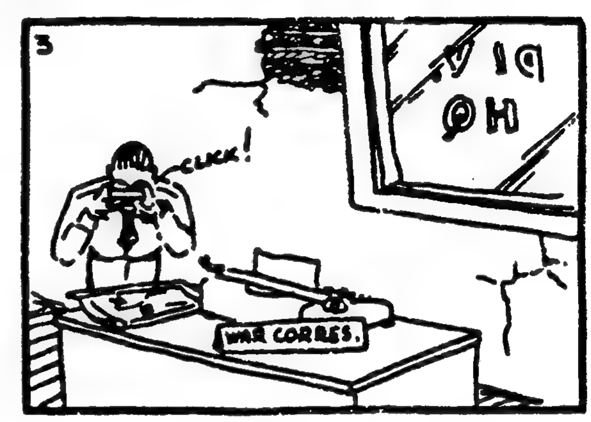
我軍想分散敵人兵力，以及前後夾攻敵人，決定派出降落 saàn 部隊坐運輸機，從敵人城市後方降落，在此情勢之下，可迫敵人兩面作戰，前後受襲。

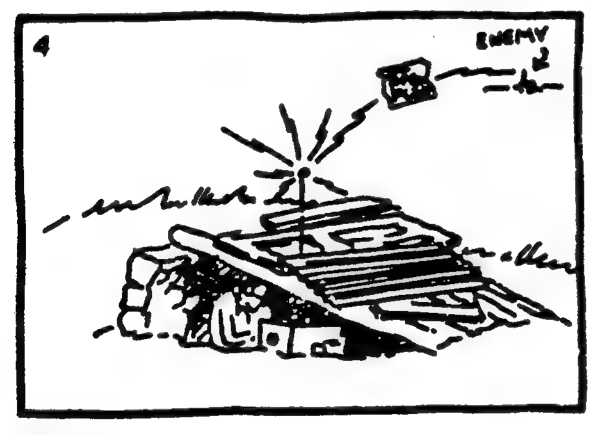
我軍降落 saàn 部隊降落之後，立即改編成為有組織之部隊，向敵人之主要交通中心與十字路口攻擊，並擴大空降地區(空頭-pó)，以利我軍飛機自由起飛降落。

LESSON 22

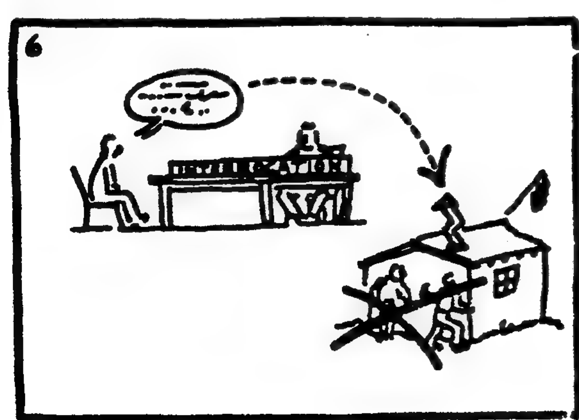


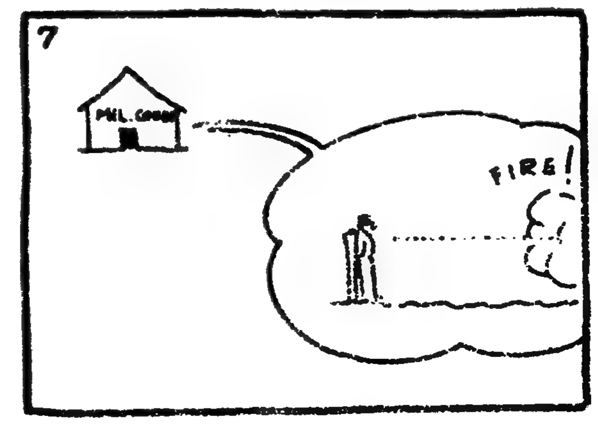












LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kaàn-tîp haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Kaàn-tîp haî tîk-yān haî ngŏh-teî kè ts'în-fong waâk haû-fong tsô pei-mât kè teî-hâ kung-tsòk kè ts'îng-pò yān-uēn.

M: Ngŏh-teî taî-pô-chôh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû iù tim-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî taî-pô-chôh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp chi-haû, ngŏh-teî hôh-ĭ tseung kaàn-tîp kaau pei kwan-sẑ faàt-t'îng, yaū kwan-sẑ faàt-t'îng shâm-p'oòn; uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî wán-tò chîng-kuî, hôh-ĭ tseung k'uĭ p'oòn yaū-k'eî t'ō-yîng, mō-k'eî t'ō-yîng waâk-chê sei-yîng.

M: Haî chîn-sẑ kik-lît kè shî-haû, tîk-yān haî ngŏh kwan chîm-lîng kè teî-taaî yaū mi-yĕ hāng-tûng?

T: Chîn-sẑ kik-lît kè shî-haû, tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp haî ngŏh kwan chîm-lîng kè teî-taaî hô oòt-tûng, haî kôh shuè tsô-chik-chôh yat-kòh kaàn-tîp-mŏng.

M: Tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp yaū mi-yĕ kè k'eĭ-t'ō?

T: Tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp k'eĭ-t'ō wôk-tak ngŏh kwan tsòk-chîn kaî-waâk kè ts'îng-pò, t'ūng kòk chûng yaū-kwaan kè ts'îng-pò.

M: Yaū yat-kòh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp tim-yeûng*?

T: Yaū yat-kòh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp fà-chong tsô yat-kòh chîn-teî ts'uî-kwan keî-chê.

M: Kôh kòh kaàn-tîp kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Kôh kòh kaàn-tîp kè chuè-iù yâm-mô hai wân-yâp ngŏh kwan kè sz sz-lîng-pô, yûng yìng-seùng* -kei t'au-yìng ngŏh-teî kè peì-mât măn-kîn*.

M: K'uĭ tak-tô ni ti ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, tìm-yeûng* tseung k'uĭ chuên-tò tîk-yăn kè sz-lîng-pô?

T: K'uĭ tak-tó ni ti ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, k'uĭ tsaû yaū peì-mât mō-sìn-tîn-t'oì, tseung ni ti ts'ìng-pò kwóng-pòh tò tîk kwan sz-lîng-pô kè ts'ìng-pò-ch'uè.

M: Kôh kòh kaàn-tîp kè oôt-tûng yaŭ mŏ yăn-heì ngŏh kwan kè faàn-kaàn yăn-uēn kè waaì-ì?

T: Yaŭ, kôh kòh kaàn-tîp kè oôt-tûng yăn-heì ngŏh kwan kè faàn-kaàn yăn-uēn kè waaì-ì. Ngŏh-teî tsik-haak tseung kôh kòh kaàn-tîp taì-pô; king-kwòh ngŏh kwan kè kwan-sẑ-faàt-t'ìng shàm-p'oòn chi-haû, k'uĭ peî p'oòn seì-yìng, tsaû yaū hăng-yìng-tuî* tseung k'uĭ ts'eung-k'uèt.

LESSON 22

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is a spy?

Answer: A spy is the intelligence personnel of the enemy who engages in secret underground activity at out front or rear.

Q: After we arrest an enemy spy, what should we do?

A: After we arrest an enemy spy, we may send the spy to the military court and let the military court conduct the trial. If we find the evidence, we may sentence him to imprisonment for certain period, imprisonment for life, or death.

Q: When the battle was raging, what action did the enemy take in our occupied area?

A: When the battle was raging, the enemy spies were very active in our occupied area, organizing a spy ring.

Q: What attempt did the enemy spies make?

A: The enemy spies attempted to secure the information pertaining to our operation plan and various related information.

Q: What did an enemy spy do?

A: An enemy spy disguised himself as a war correspondent.

Q: What was that spy's chief mission?

A: That spy's chief mission was to infiltrate into our division headquarters and, using a camera, take photographs of our secret documents.

Q: After he secured this information, how did he have it relayed to the enemy headquarters?

LESSON 22

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: After he obtained this information, he broadcast it to the intelligence section of the enemy headquarters through a secret radio station.

Q: Did the activity of that spy arouse suspicion of our counter-intelligence personnel?

A: Yes, that spy's activity aroused the suspicion of our counter-intelligence personnel. We arrested that spy immediately. After the trial by our military court, he was sentenced to the death penalty, and was executed by our firing squad.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The war correspondents obtained their news and information by eye-witnessing the battle.
2. I obtained my information from the headquarters. Where did you get yours?
3. Enemy's spies disguised as farmers infiltrated into our area.
4. According to this order, you are supposed to have him executed by now.
5. He will be tried by the military court for misconduct.
6. No one suspected that I could secretly take photographs with this pen.
7. The military court sentenced him to die in the electric chair.
8. He will be released because of insufficient evidence.
9. He broke up a spy ring all by himself.
10. He hires a good lawyer to defend him. I don't think he will be sentenced to life imprisonment.
11. Although I am not very active, I enjoy the activities of the club.
12. You are not attempting to stop the firing squad; are you?
13. Because I suspect her disguising as a nurse, I watch her every move in and out of the hospital.
14. He identifies himself as a counter-intelligence agent.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. This execution unit executes an average of one person a day.
16. I do suspect her and I don't trust her.

LESSON 22

WORD LIST

1.	ts'eung-k'uèt	to execute by shooting
2.	chìn-teî ch'uî-kwan keì-chê (chìn-teî keì-chê)	war correspondent
3.	chìng-kuì	evidence, proof
4.	fà-chong	to disguise
5.	faàn-kaàn yān-uēn	counter-intelligence personnel (CIC)
6.	haāng-yìng tuî*	execution unit (Firing Squad)
7.	k'eĭ-t'ō	attempt; to attempt
8.	kik-lît	fierce (battle, debate, etc)
9.	kwan-sẑ faàt-t'ìng	military court, court martial
10.	mō-k'eì t'ō-yìng	life imprisonment
11.	p'òh-wôk	to break up (spy ring, smuggling, etc)
12.	p'oòn (p'oòn-ch'uê)	to sentence
13.	seì-yìng	death sentence
14.	shâm-p'oòn	to try (court)
15.	t'au-yìng	to take photograph secretly
16.	wân-yâp	to infiltrate into
17.	wôk-tak	to secure, obtain

LESSON 22

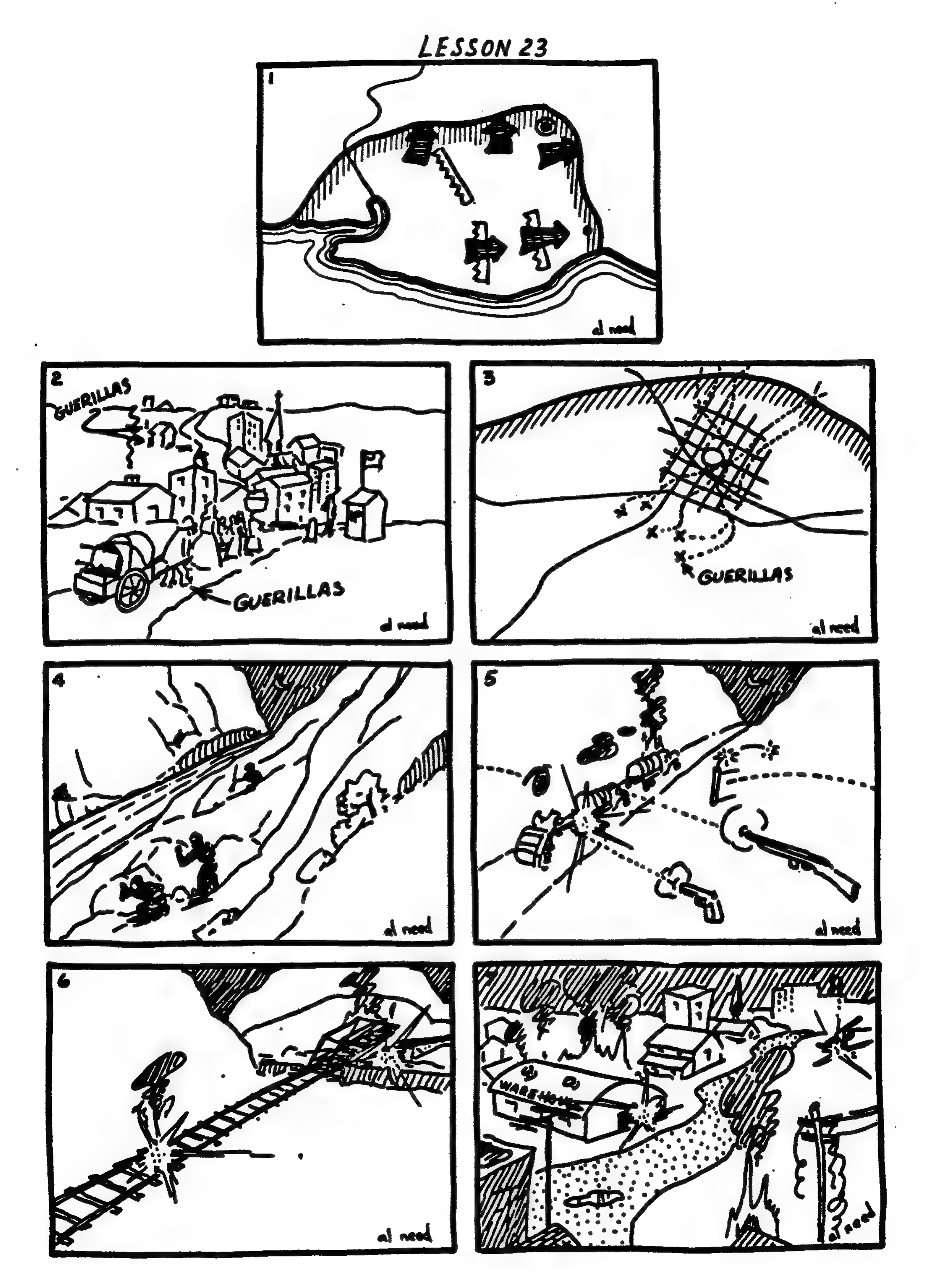
READING MATERIAL

當戰事激烈之時，敵人留下之間-tîp 在我軍佔領地帶，異常活動，企圖獲得我軍之作戰計劃及各種有關情報。

其中一間 tîp 化裝為戰地隨軍記者，混入我軍師司令部，用影相機偷影秘密文件；然後由秘密無線電台，將文件內容傳送至敵軍情報處。但其活動引起我軍反間人員之懷疑，即將此間-tîp 逮捕。

我軍審訊此間-tîp 之後，根據其口供，並能破獲敵人之間-tîp 機關；我軍軍事法庭，將所有捕獲之間-tîp ，判處死刑。

LESSON 23



1
al need
2
GUERILLAS
GUERILLAS
al need
3
GUERILLAS
al need
4
al need
5
al need
6
al need
WAREHOUSE
al need

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Yaū-kik-tuî* haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Yaū-kik-tuî* haî yat-kŏh saì kè pô-tuî*; k'uĭ-teî wân-yâp tîk-yān kè haû-fong, taam-yâm p'ŏh-waaî kè kung-tsŏk; k'uĭ-teî cheùk pîn-i, kw'aî-taaî hing-pîn kè mŏ-heî.

M: Yaū-kik-tuî* tîm-yeûng* tâ-cheùng?

T: Yaū-kik-tuî* toh-sŏ haî yê-maān tâ-cheùng, k'uĭ-teî yûng fâ-chîng-waî-lîng kè chîn-shût. K'uĭ-teî pin shuè to huì, mŏ yat-tîng kè chân-teî.

M: Yaū-kik-tuî* kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

T: K'uĭ-teî kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî iŭ-luên tîk-yān kè haû-fong, p'ŏh-waaî tîk-yān kè kwan-sż ts'ît-peî, t'ūng chûng-iù kè kaau-t'ung-sîn.

M: Ngŏh kwan chîm-lîng-chŏh tîk-yān hoì-ngôn kè keî kŏh chûng-iù shîng-shĭ chi-haû, ngŏh-teî yaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè kwan-tuî* kaì-tsûk ts'în-tsûn, sham-yâp tîk-yān kè noî-teî, chîm-lîng yat-kŏh hŏ kân-iù kè shîng-shĭ.

M: Tîk-yān yaū kŏh kŏh shîng-shì ts'ît-t'uì chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān yaū kŏh kŏh shîng-shĭ ts'ît-t'uì chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî laū hŏ toh yaū-kik-tuî* haî kŏh kŏh shîng-shĭ shuè.

M: Kŏh kŏh shîng-shĭ ngoî-pîn kè tîk-yān yaū-kik-tuî* tîm-yeûng* sâm-yâp ngŏh kwan kè haû-fong?

T: Tîk-yān kè yaū-kik-tuî* fâ-chong tsô naân-mān; k'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwŏh ngŏh-teî kè kîm-ch'ā-chaâm, sâm-yâp ngŏh kwan kè haû-fong.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tsaâp-kik ngŏh-teî kè wân-shue-tuî*?

T: Haî maăn-t'aū-haak, k'uĭ-teî maaî-fûk haî hîm-iù kè shaan-lô p'ōng-pin. Ngŏh-teî kè wân-shue-tuî* king-kwòh shaan-kuk kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû ning-ch'ut shaû-ts'eung mă-ts'eung shaû-laū-taân* t'ūng chà-yeûk tàng tàng hing-pîn kè mŏ-heî huì tsaâp-kik ngŏh-teî. Ngŏh kwan chùng-fûk, sheung-mōng hô ch'ūng.

M: K'uĭ-teî yaû p'òh-waaî mi-yĕ?

T: K'uĭ-teî chà-waî ngŏh kwan kè wân-shue-sìn, hô-ts'ž t'ìt-lô, k'iū-leūng tàng tàng chi-haû, yaû p'òh-waaî ngŏh-teî kè ts'ong-foò, taân*-yeûk-foò, pô-k'ap-chaâm, tàng tàng.

LESSON 23

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is guerilla unit?

Answer: Guerilla unit is a small unit. They infiltrate into the enemy rear, and undertake work of sabotage; they wear plain clothes and carry small arms.

Q: How do guerillas fight?

A: Guerillas mostly fight at night. They employ the tactics of dispersal. They go everywhere and do not have a definite position.

Q: What is the main mission of guerillas?

A: Their main mission is to harrass the enemy rear, to destroy military installations and important communication lines of the enemy.

Q: After we captured several important cities along the enemy coast, what did we do then?

A: We continued to advance, penetrated the enemy inland and captured a very important city.

Q: After the enemy withdrew from that city, what did they do?

A: When the enemy withdrew from that city, they left a large number of guerillas in that city.

Q: How did the enemy guerillas outside of that city infiltrate into our rear?

A: The enemy guerillas disguised themselves as refugees. They passed our check point and infiltrated into our rear.

LESSON 23

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did they raid our transportation unit?

A: During the night, they set up an ambush on the side of the steep path of the mountain. When our transportation unit passed the draw, they drew out small arms, like pistols, carbines, hand-grenades and dynamite to strike us. We were trapped by the ambush and suffered heavy casualties.

Q: What else did they destroy?

A: After they destroyed our transportation lines, such as rail-roads, bridges, etc., they also destroyed our warehouses, ammunition dump, and supply dump.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Although two of our men were wounded, the raid was a success.
2. We will strike at the enemy's stronghold tomorrow morning with all our strength.
3. How would you like the idea of building an ammunition dump at the foot of the mountain?
4. Ten of our men had already infiltrated into enemy's line.
5. If the enemy retreated to the draw we'll set up an ambush here.
6. Stay by my side, I don't want you to be trapped by ambush.
7. Our soldiers disguised in plain clothes were able to infiltrate into the warehouses and other key points.
8. These refugees came from the inland by the thousands.
9. When you go through the checking point, be prepared to strike.
10. Your mission is to destroy the warehouse located on this road.
11. It is necessary to employ guerilla tactics whenever your unit is being cut off from the main group.
12. They destroy the equipment with dynamite.
13. You will carefully check all refugees for arms and ammunition at the checking point.
14. Even though they were in plain clothes, I recognized them to be Captain Smith and Major White.
15. The squad leader ordered his men to disperse the moment enemy planes are sighted.
16. We are trapped. What are we going to do?

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

17. You don't look like a refugee to me. Do you have any identification?

LESSON 23

WORD LIST

1.	chà-waì	to destroy (by bomb, dynamite), demolish
2.	chà-yeûk	dynamite
3.	ts'ong-foò	warehouse
4.	chùng-fûk	to be trapped by ambush
5.	fà-chìng-waì-lìng	to disperse all around (to split one unit into numerous, guerilla tactics)
6.	hìm-iù	steep, important (in terrain, in combat)
7.	iŭ-luên	to harass
8.	kìm-ch'ā-chaâm	checking point
9.	maaì-fûk	to set up an ambush; ambush
10.	naân-mān	refugee
11.	pîn-i	plain clothes
12.	p'òh-waaî	to destroy
13.	shaan-kuk	draw (terrain)
16.	sham-yâp	to infiltrate into
17.	taân*-yeûk foò	ammunition dump

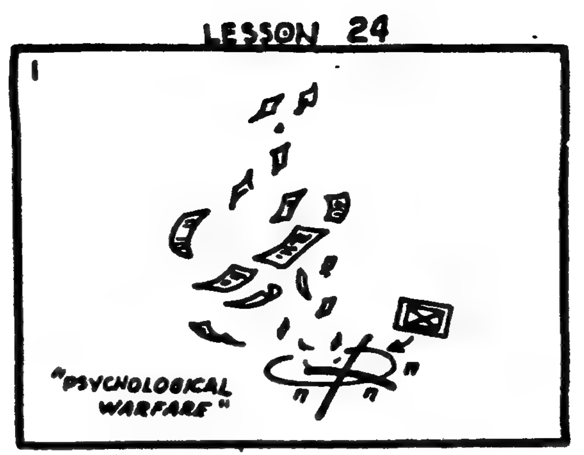
LESSON 23

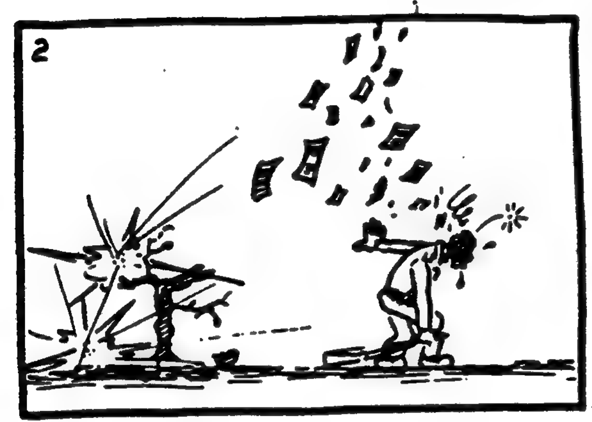
READING MATERIAL

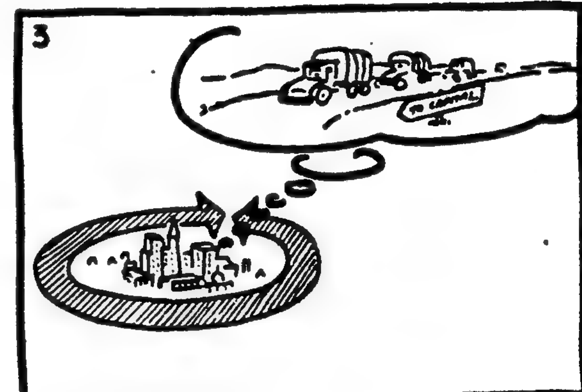
我軍佔據敵人海岸之數處要點之後，繼續前進，深入敵人內地，佔領一重要城市。

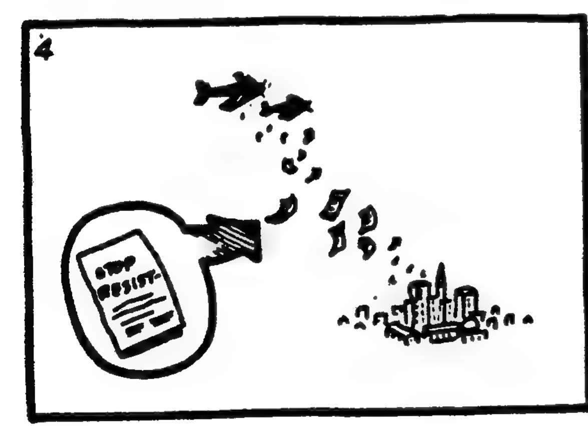
但敵人於後退之時，留下許多游擊隊於市內，此等游擊隊化裝為難民，通過我軍檢查站，sam 入城市後，方化整為零，晚黑之時，埋伏於險要山路兩旁，及至我運輸隊經過其地，即以手槍，馬槍，手-lan 彈等輕便武器，施行襲擊，並以炸藥炸毀我軍運輸線，如鐵路，橋樑等等，復於市內破壞我倉庫及軍事設備。

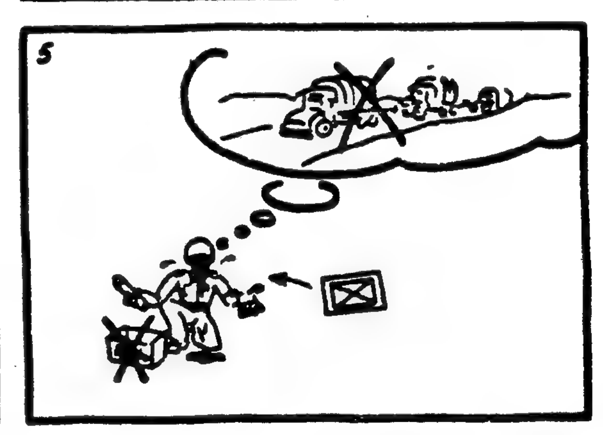
LESSON 24

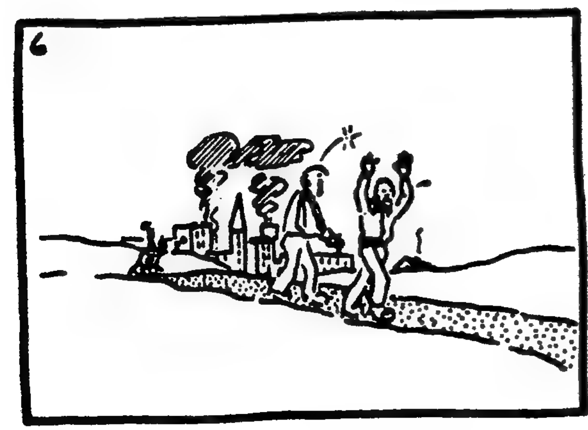


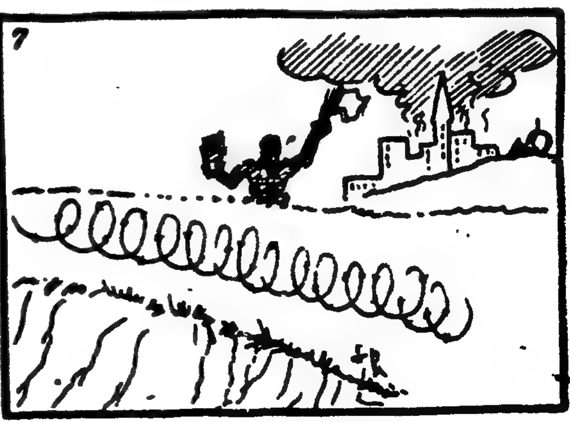












LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Haî în-toî kè chìn-chang, kwaan-ue k'uèt shìng-foô kè t'iû-kìn*, ch'uì-chôh mŏ-heî chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ?

Taâp: Haî în-toî kè chìn-chang, kwaan-ue k'uèt shìng-foô kè t'iû-kìn*, ch'uì-chôh mŏ-heî chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn.

M: Sam-leĭ-chìn haî mi-yĕ? K'uĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ hó-ch'uè?

T: Yûng sam-leĭ huì chìn-paaî tîk-yăn, ni chúng paân-faàt kiû-tsô sam-leĭ-chìn. Sam-leĭ-chìn kè hó-ch'uè haî yûng tsuì tai kè toî-kà tak-tó tsuì taaî kè shau-wôk.

Ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ yûng sam-leĭ-chìn huì lìng tîk-yăn leî-sam, ìm-chìn, faân-chìn, waâk-chê yăn-heî tîk-yăn kè ping-pìn, t'ŏ-mŏng, tâng tâng.

M: Sam-leĭ-chìn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ?

T: Sam-leĭ-chìn paau-k'oòt saân ch'uēn-taan, tîk-ts'ìn haâm-wâ, tîk-haû kwóng-pòh, tâng tâng.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'ž tìm-kaaî iû yûng sam-leĭ-chìn?

T: Tîk-yăn kè shaû-to ĭ-king peî ngŏh kwan paau-waî, taân-haî tîk-yăn seî-shaû-toî-oōn. Uē-kwôh ngŏh kwan kaî-tsûk kung-kik, sheung fong sheung-mŏng yat-tîng hó ch'ŭng. Waî kaâm-shiû sheung-mŏng heî-kìn, ngŏh kwan yûng sam-leĭ-chìn.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'ž tìm-yeûng* tsûn-hăng sam-leĭ-chìn?

T: Ngôh-teî p'aaî fei-kei huì tîk-yăn kè ts'ìn-sìn saân ch'uēn-taan, wâ ngŏh kwan ĭ-king tseung k'uĭ-teî kè shaû-to seî-mìn paau-waî, shôh-yaŭ kè pó-k'ap-sìn to ĭ-king t'uēn-tsuêt, taân*-

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

yeûk t'ūng leūng-shìk ch'a-m̄-toh yûng-uēn, hô toh ko-k'ap kè chî-fai-koon to tsaû-chôh. Uē-kwôh k'uĭ-teî kaì-tsûk taì-k'òng, tsik-haî tsž-shaàt; uē-kwôh k'uĭ-teî tsž-tûng t'aū-hōng, chìn-sž t'ìng-chî ĭ-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû hìn-sùng k'uĭ-teî ooì kwòk.

M: Ni ts'ž saàn ch'uēn-taan kè haaû-kwôh tìm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān taân*-tsûn oōn-tsuêt, sž-heì tai-lôk. K'uĭ-teî t'aì kìn ch'uēn-taan chi-haû, kòh kòh to seûng t'ō-mōng t'ūng t'aū-hōng. Shôh-ĭ tîk-yān kè t'ō-ping yat-yât peì yat-yât toh.

M: K'uĭ-teî tìm-yeûng* heùng ngŏh kwan t'aū-hōng?

T: K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû t'ō-mōng; k'uĭ-teî yat-shaû ning-chuê paâk-k'eì, yat-shaû ning-chuê ch'uēn-taan tsaû tò ngŏh kwan kè chân-teî shuè.

M: Ngŏh kwan tseung t'ō-ping sùng huì pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh kwan tseung t'ō-ping sùng tò haû-fong.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: In the war nowadays, concerning the factors determining between victory and defeat, what else is there besides weapons.

Answer: In the war nowadays, regarding the factors determining between victory and defeat, besides weapons, there is the psychological warfare.

Q: What is psychological warfare: What is its advantage?

A: To defeat the enemy by psychological means is called the psychological warfare. The advantage of psychological warfare is to secure the biggest gain at the least cost. We can employ the psychological warfare to cause the enemy to lose heart, become battle-weary, create opposition to the war, to create mutiny,cause desertion, etc.

Q: What does psychological warfare include?

A: Psychological warfare includes the dropping of leaflets, sending calls to the enemy front, broadcasting to the rear of the enemy, etc.

Q: Why did we have to use psychological warfare this time?

A: The national capital of the enemy was already surrounded, but the enemy defended desperately waiting for the reinforcement. If we continued the attack, the casualties on both sides would have been very heavy. In order to minimize the casualties we employed psychological warfare.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did we conduct psychological warfare this time?

A: We sent out airplanes to the enemy front to drop leaflets, telling them that our force has already surrounded their national capital on all sides, all the supply lines were cut off, the ammunitions and provisions were almost exhausted, and that many high-ranking commanders have fled. If they continued to resist, it would mean suicide. If they surrendered voluntarily, we would repatriate them to their home country after the war.

Q: What was the effect of leaflets dropping this time?

A: The enemy exhausted their ammunitions and were hopeless of having any reinforcement. The morale was low. After they saw the leaflets, everyone wanted to desert and surrender. Therefore the number of enemy deserters mounted day by day.

Q: How did they surrender to our force?

A: They mostly deserted at night. They carried a white flag in one hand and a leaflet in the other, rushing to our positions

Q: To where did we send the deserters?

A: We sent the deserters to the rear.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. We secured the biggest gain at the least cost of production by this new method.
2. These deserters are to be sent to headquarters under guard.
3. Although he came back voluntarily, he is a deserter just the same.
4. We are not going to retreat or surrender, even though we are short of ammunitions.
5. The special service provide entertainment to boost the morale of the troops.
6. Broadcasting to the enemy front required a competent linguist.
7. Their spirit may be low, but they have not lost the will to fight.
8. This is a strategic position, they will defend it with their lives.
9. When you are in combat, you have to kill or to be killed.
10. It is said that power is peace.
11. The effect of your presence is tremendous.
12. Battle fatigue may result through lack of sleep and over-work.
13. This battle is a decisive one.
14. Dropping of leaflets is important in psychological wareface.
15. We will not surrender even though our ammunitions are exhausted.
16. We will repatriate these POW as soon as possible.
17. Some of them surrendered but some continued to fight.

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-paaî...	to defeat...
2.	faán chìn	to oppose war; opposition of war; anti-war
3.	haaû-kwôh	effect
4.	hín-sùng	to repatriate
5.	ìm chìn	battle-weary
6.	în-toî	nowadays, modern
7.	k'uèt shìng-foô	to determine between victory and defeat
8.	leì-sam	to lose heart, be demoralized
9.	ping-pìn	mutiny
10.	seí-shaŭ-toî-oōn	to defend desperately and wait for reinforcement (sustained defense)
11.	taân*-tsûn oōn-tsuêt	short of ammunition and hopeless of being reinforced
12.	tai-lôk	low, lowered, (morale, spirit)
13.	tîk-ts'ìn haàm-wâ	to send calls to the enemy front
14.	t'ō-mōng	to desert; desert
15.	t'ō-ping	deserter
16.	tsuì taaî kè shau-wôk	the biggest gain
17.	tsuì tai kè toî-kà	the lowest cost
18.	tsùn-haāng	to conduct, engage in (war, work, etc)

WORD LIST

19.	tsẑ-tûng	voluntary; voluntarily
20.	laăng-chìn	cold war
21.	kîng-kò̂	to warn, admonish; warning

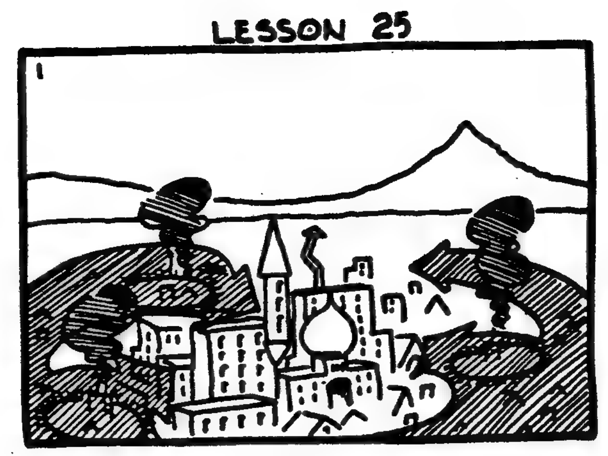
LESSON 24

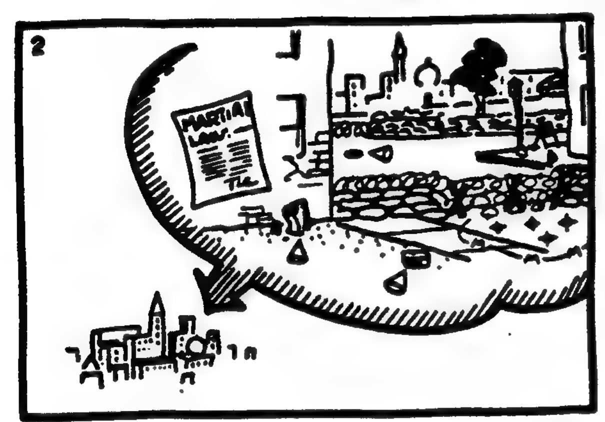
READING MATERIAL

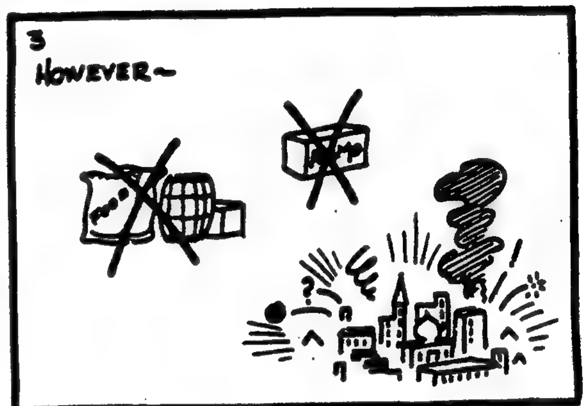
用心理辦法與敵對之國家相爭，稱為心理戰。此種辦法為和平時期冷戰之獨一利器。但在戰事發生之時，亦可利用心理戰令敵人離心，厭戰，以及反戰，或者引起敵人兵變，逃亡，等等。

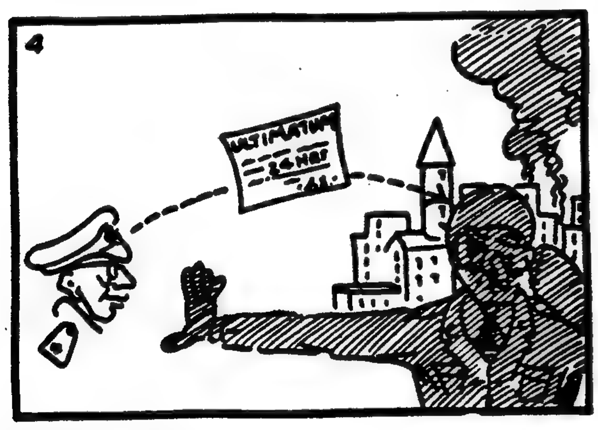
敵人首都，已被我軍包圍，但敵人死守待援，不肯投降。我軍為減少傷亡起見，決用心理戰，派飛機到敵人前線散放傳單，警告敵人停止抵抗。果然，敵人在此彈盡援絕之時，士氣低落，或投降，或逃亡，人數每日有增無減。敵人投降之時，一手高舉白旗，一手緊執傳單，走入我軍陣地，既可憐，亦可笑。此足證明心理戰效力之大。

LESSON 25

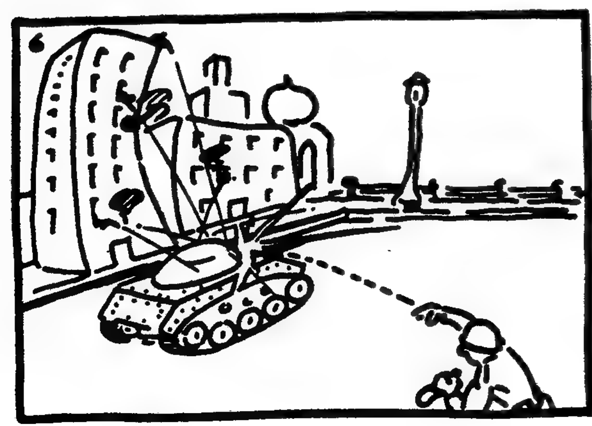


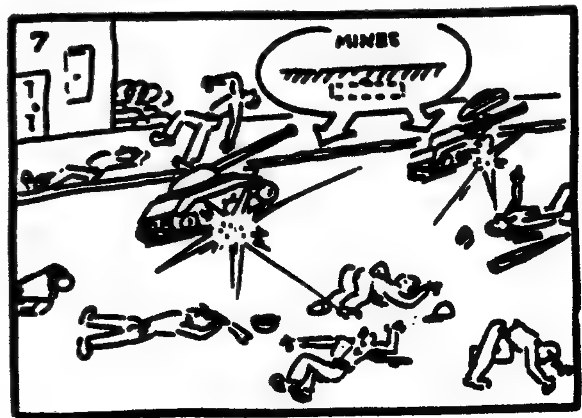












LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān shaû-to kaau-ngoî kè chûng-iû kuì-tim uēn-ts'uēn peî ngōh kwan chìm-lîng chi-haû, tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk pô-tuî* t'uì-tò pin shuè?

Taâp: Tîk-yān shaû-to kaau-ngoî kè chûng-iû kuì-tim uēn-ts'uēn peî ngōh kwan chìm-lîng chi-haû, tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk pô-tuî* t'uì-tò shaû-to kè luî-pìn.

M: Tîk-yān shaû-kwan sz-lîng kè tsòk-chìn kai-waâk tìm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān shaû-kwan sz-lîng tâ-suèn seî-shaû; uē-kwòh shaû m-chuê, tsaû tât-waî.

M: Ngōh kwan kè kung-shìng pô-tuî* tâ-suèn tìm-yeûng*? Tsuì-haû tìm-yeûng*?

T: Ngōh kwan kè chì-fai-koon heùng tîk-yān shaû-kwan sz-lîng hâ tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp, haân k'uî-teî haî î-shâp-seì siû-shî chi-noî t'aû-hōng. Uē-kwòh tîk-yān m-tsìp-shaû, ngōh-teî tsaû hoi-ch'ì tsûng kung-kik. Î-shâp-seì siû-shî chi-haû, tîk kwan k'uî-tsuêt tsìp-shaû ngōh-teî kè tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp. Ngōh kwan hoi-ch'ì tsûng kung-kik. Ngōh-teî kè taaî-p'aaû heùng shìng-noî maâng-lît kwang-kik.

M: Shaû-to luî-pìn kè ts'ìng-yìng tìm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk kwan sz-lîng hâ lîng kaaì-īm. Shìng-noî tò-shuè fòng pô-shaaû; haî kòk taaî kìn-chuk-mât kè ts'ìn-pìn fòng hó toh sha-paau; chûng-iû kè shâp-tsź-lô-haû yaû teî-luì-k'ui t'ūng haâm-tsêng. Taân-haî tîk-yān kè leūng-shîk t'ūng taân*-yeûk m-kaû. Shî-noî tît-tsuî wân-luên.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan kè tsúng kung-kik hoi-ch'ì chi-haû, sheung fong kè ts'ìng-yìng tìm-yeûng*?

T: King-kwŏh keì siû-shì kè chìn-taû chi-haû, ngŏh kwan kè t'aân-hak-ch'e ìm-oô sin-t'aû pô-tuì* yàp shìng. Shaû-to faât-shang hông-chìn. Tìk-yàn haì taaì kìn-chuk-mât kè ts'eung-haû t'ûng uk-téng shuè yûng hing ping-heì heûng ngŏh kwan shê-kik; k'uì-teì kè pô-ping heûng ngŏh kwan t'aân-hak-ch'e kè seì-kŏk ch'ung-fung. Ngŏh kwan kè keì kà t'aân-hak-ch'e chông-tổ teì-luì. Sheung fong kè seì-sheung to hô ch'ûng.

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After all the suburban key points of the enemy capital were captured by our force, to where did the enemy main force retreat?

Answer: After all the suburban key points of the enemy's capital were captured by our force, the enemy main force retreated to the capital.

Q: What was the operation plan of the commander of the enemy defenders?

A: The commander of the enemy defenders planned to defend until the last minute. If they couldn't hold the city, they would break out.

Q: What did our siege force plan? What happened finally?

A: Our commander delivered an ultimatum to the commander of the enemy defenders, demanding them to surrender within twenty-four hours. If the enemy would not accept, we would initiate the general assault. Twenty-four hours later, the enemy refused to accept our ultimatum. We started the general assault. Our artillery pieces shelled the city with violent fires.

Q: What was the situation inside the capital?

A: The enemy commander declared martial law. There were sentries everywhere in the city. Sand bags were piles up in front of various large buildings. Mine fields and booby traps were set up at the important street intersections. However, the enemy were short of provisions and ammunition. The city was chaotic.

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: After we initiated the general assault, how were situations on both sides?

A: After a combat of several hours, our tanks covered the vanguards to rush into the city. Street fighting in the capital occurred. The enemy fired with small arms from windows and roof tops of large buildings at our forces. Their infantrymen charged toward the dead-spaces of our tanks. Several of our tanks hit mines. Casualties on both sides were very heavy.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The city is in a state of confusion, and many spies infiltrated into military reservations.
2. The commander ordered his troops to continue fighting from street to street.
3. The general assault will be launched at 1800 hours.
4. If you can't hold this bridge, you can retreat to the hills to the north of this city.
5. We have to break through the enemy tonight.
6. This ultimatum demands our surrender within an hour.
7. We will not accept the ultimatum, and we will bombard their units with everything we have.
8. The whole country is under martial law and sentries are posted everywhere.
9. I refuse to shell the city because some of my men already entered the city and are fighting on the streets.
10. Charging toward the enemy tank is dangerous.
11. You will put some sand bags behind this window and set a booby trap at that entrance.
12. I will be in charge of this unit for the general assault.
13. The tanks will cover the troops to advance toward the city.
14. Casualties on both sides are very low.
15. Make a survey of the situation and report back to me.
16. Pile up some sanbags in front of this door.

LESSON 25

WORD LIST

1. haâm-tsîng (haâm-tsêng) — booby trap
2. haân (haân k'eì) — to demand (deadline)
3. hông-chìn — street fighting
4. kaaì-ìm — martial law
5. k'uĭ-tsuêt — to refuse, reject
6. kung-shìng pô-tuî* — siege unit
7. kwang-kik — to shell, bombard
8. pô-shaaù — sentry
9. seí-kòk — dead space
10. sha-paau — sandbag
11. shaû-kwan sz-lìng — commander of defenders
12. shaû m̀-chuê — cannot hold (place)
13. tât-waì — to break a siege, break out
14. tît-tsuì — order (place, city, classroom, etc)
15. tsìp-shaû — to accept
16. tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp (oi-tik-meĭ-tun shue) — ultimatum
17. wân-luên — chaotic; confusion
18. tui-chì — to pile up; to heap together in a pile
19. kw'àn-shaù chi taù — to fight like a trapped animal

LESSON 25

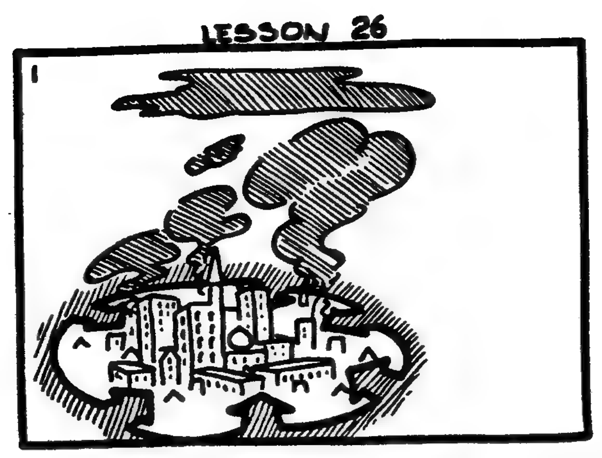
READING MATERIAL

敵人首都郊外所有據點，完全被我軍佔領。敵人主力部隊，全數退入城內，準備巷戰。敵人施行戒嚴；到處堆置沙包，埋藏地雷。

但糧食不足，彈藥將盡，市內秩序混亂。我軍指揮官向敵人守軍下最後通-tip，限於二十四小時之內投降。

敵人仍想作困獸之鬥，拒絕接受我軍最後通-tip。我軍迫不得已，開始向城內炮擊；經數小時炮戰之後，我軍先頭部隊，即攻入市區，巷戰發生。敵人由大建築物之屋頂及窗口，用輕兵器向我軍射擊；有等步兵更向我軍t'ahn克車之死角衝-fung。我軍有數架t'ahn克車撞地雷被毀，雙方死傷重大。

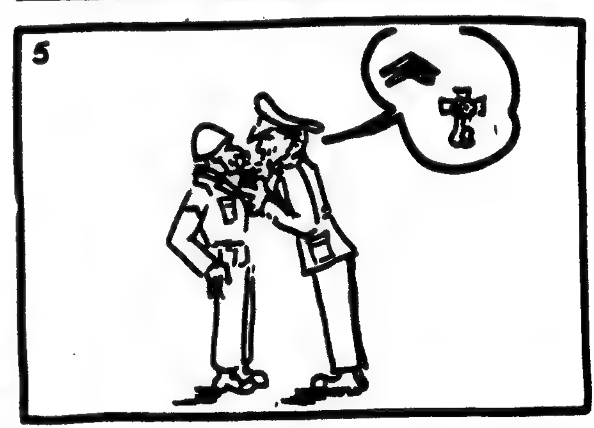
LESSON 26

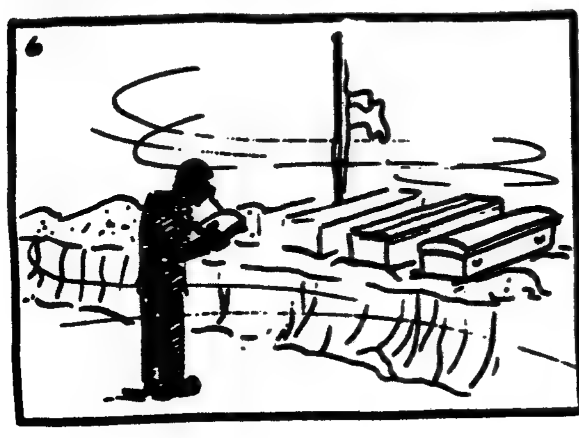














LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān kè shaû-to în-tsòî kè ts'îng-shaî tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Tîk-yān kè shaû-to peî ngŏh kwan seî-mîn paau-waî. Chìn-taû ī-king tò-chôh tsuî-haû kaai-tuên. Ts'îng-shaî hó îm-chûng, shī-mān to sôh-chuê moōn, m-kôm ch'ut kaai.

M: Tîk-yān mŏ faàt-tsź tsoî taî-k'òng kè shî-haû, chî yaŭ tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān mŏ-faàt-tsź tsoî taî-k'òng kè shî-haû, chî yaŭ mō-t'iū-kîn* t'aū-hōng. K'uî-teî p'aaî toî-piû heûng ngŏh kwan t'aî-ch'ut yau-chìn kè ts'îng-k'aū.

M: T'îng chìn chi-haû, ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* waî-ch'î shī-noî kè chî-on?

T: Ngŏh kwan hâ kaaî-îm kè mîng-lîng, p'aaî-ch'ut hìn-ping kîm-ch'â p'îng-mān. Ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* kaaî-ch'uî tîk-yān kè mŏ-chong, fooi-fûk shī-noî kè tît-tsuî.

M: Ngŏh-teî chìn-shìng chi-haû, ngŏh-teî kè chìm-lîng kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ kuî-tûng?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè hoî, lûk, hung saam-kwan kuî-hāng taaî ts'ūn-hāng, hoi-yâp tîk-yān kè shaû-to. Tîk kwòk shaû-to kè yān-mān foon-yîng ngŏh kwan.

M: Ngŏh-teî kòk teî-fong kè kwan-tuî* tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kòk teî kè chìm-lîng kwan kaaî-ch'uî tong-teî tîk-yān kè mŏ-chong, hìng-chuk tsuî-haû kè shìng-leî.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foô tuî yaŭ-kung kè tseûng-sź tîm-yeûng*?

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì yaŭ-kung kè tseùng-sẑ paan-faàt fan-cheung, waâk-chè shing-k'ap.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì shaû-sheung kè kwan-yān tìm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì shaû-sheung kè kwan-yān waì-lō, tuì sheung-mōng kwan-yān kè ka-shûk foó-sut.

M: Ts'uēn kwòk yān-mān tuì chân-mōng tseùng-sẑ tìm-yeûng*?

T: Ts'uēn kwòk yān-mān tuì chân-mōng tseùng-sẑ kuì-hāng kung-tsaì tìn-laî, ts'uēn kwòk kwan mān to kw'ōng-foon, hìng-chuk shìng-leî yât.

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is the present situation in the enemy capital?

Answer: The enemy capital was surrounded on all sides by our force. The combat has already reached the final phase. The situation was very serious. All the residents had their doors locked. They did not dare to go out.

Q: When the enemy were incapable of resisting any longer, what was the only thing they could do?

A: When the enemy were incapable of resisting any longer, they could only resort to unconditional surrender. They sent representatives to present an armistice request.

Q: After the armistice, how did we maintain order inside the city?

A: We declared martial law, and sent out military police to inspect the civilians. Our units disarmed the enemy, and restored the city order.

Q: After we won the war, what activity did our occupation army have?

A: Our Armed Forces held a big parade while entering the enemy's capital. The people in the capital of the enemy country welcomed our forces.

Q: What did our forces in various places do?

A: Our occupation troops in various places disarmed the enemy, and celebrated the final victory.

Q: What did our government do for the meritorious soldiers?

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Our government awarded medals or promotions to the meritorious soldiers.

Q: What did our government do for those wounded soldiers?

A: Our government brought comfort to those wounded soldiers, and gave compensations to the families of the wounded and dead.

Q: What did the people in the whole nation do for the soldiers killed in action?

A: The people in the whole nation held memorial ceremonies honoring the dead. All the soldiers and civilians in the whole nation were overjoyed in celebrating this victory day.

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Soldiers fallen in action did not die in vain.
2. After the cease-fire, our units entered the city.
3. At this time, I would like to apply for a transfer.
4. Remember to lock the door when you go out tonight.
5. General Smith will present you the award for meritorious service today.
6. A memorial ceremony will be held on Armistice Day every year.
7. Please continue the good work, we still have a lot of work to do.
8. Your behavior is very childish.
9. I hope we will not have any more trouble in the future.
10. She tried to subdue the thief without using any weapon.
11. I will be very happy to come to your birthday party.
12. These are members of my family: my parents, my brother, my sister and my wife.
13. The government will give compensations to the families of the wounded and dead.
14. The police restored order in the streets.
15. The present situation of the occupied city is chaotic.
16. Your injury is very critical. I think I better notify the members of your family.

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	chân-mōng	to kill in action
2.	tseùng-sẑ	soldiers (officers and enlisted personnel)
3.	ts'ūn-haāng	parade, demonstration
4.	foò-sut	to compensate, compassionate; compensation
5.	ka-shûk	family members
6.	kaaî-ch'uî... mŏ-chong	to disarm
7.	kaai-tuên	phase, stage (situation)
8.	kuî-haāng	to hold (meeting, ceremony, parade, exhibition, concert, etc)
9.	kuî-tûng	act, conduct, behavior
10.	kung-tsaî tîn-laĭ	memorial ceremony (soldiers, civilian, friend, etc)
11.	kw'ōng-foon	to overjoy
12.	paan-faàt fan-cheung	to award medal
13.	t'aî-ch'ut... ts'îng-k'aū	to present the request to...
14.	yau chîn	armistice, cease fire truce
15.	yaŭ-kung	meritorious, well-deserved; to deserve the credit

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

敵人首都被我軍攻入，雖在市內仍作强頑抵抗，但大部份被我軍消滅，少數殘餘無法再抗。只有無條件投降，派代表向我軍提出休戰請求。

我軍全數開入敵人首都，敵國人民夾道歡迎。我軍將各地敵人武裝解除，海、陸、空三軍舉行大巡遊。政府對有功將士發給 Xun- 章，或者升級；對受傷軍人慰勞；對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮。全國軍民狂歡慶祝勝利日。

C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E

Basic Course

Volume VIII

Lessons 1-26

(Character Text)

July 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PART II

第一課　基本訓練

問：單人入伍之後，起首嘅訓練係乜野？

答：單人入伍之後，起首嘅訓練係基本訓練。

問：基本訓練包括好多野，但係最緊要嘅野係乜野？

答：基本訓練包括好多野，但係最緊要嘅係制式教練、戰鬥教練，同射擊教練。

問：制式教練又叫做乜野教練呀？

答：制式教練又叫做密集隊形教練。

問：制式教練嘅基本單位係乜野呢？

答：制式教練嘅基本單位係班，排，連。

問：制式教練包括乜野呀？

答：制式教練包括隊形編成，集合同解散　步法、操槍法，

行進，方向隊形變換等等．

問：戰鬥教練又叫做乜野呀？

答：戰鬥教練又叫做散開隊形教練．

問：戰鬥教練嘅單位係乜野呢？

答：戰鬥教練嘅單位亦都係班，排，連．

問：戰鬥教練包括啲乜野呢？

答：戰鬥教練包括攻擊嘅隊形同運動，或者防禦嘅隊形同運動

問：射擊教練包括乜野呢？

答：射擊教練包括射擊預習，射擊實習，紀錄射擊，同戰鬥射擊．

第一課　基本訓練

基本訓練係軍人起首嘅訓練．呢種訓練亦都包括非常之多野．但係最緊要嘅有制式教練，戰鬥教練，同射擊教練．制式教練又叫做密集隊形教練．呢種教練嘅基本單位係班，排，連．教練包括隊形編成，集合解散，步法，操槍法，行進，方向隊形變換等等．戰鬥教練又叫做散開隊形教練．基本嘅單位亦都係班，排，連．教練包括攻擊或者防禦嘅隊形同運動．射擊教練有射擊預習，射擊實習，紀錄射擊，同戰鬥射擊．

第二課　陸軍編制

問：國防部係一個乜野機關？

答：國防部係國家最高嘅軍政機關．

問：國防部負責乜野呀？指揮乜野呀？

答：國防部負責國防嘅事務，指揮海陸空三軍．

問：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制同唔同呀？

答：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制唔同．

問：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制點樣唔同呀？

答：戰時嘅編制比較平時嘅編制大好多，平時編制表嘅人員係要黎做戰時嘅幹部．

問：陸軍最高嘅機關係乜野呀？

答：陸軍最高嘅機關係陸軍總司令部．

問：平時陸軍最大嘅單位係也野呀？

答：平時陸軍最大嘅單位係軍。

問：軍嘅下便有也野呀？

答：軍嘅下便有師；師嘅下便有團，營，連等等。

問：戰時陸軍嘅編制點樣呀？

答：戰時陸軍嘅編制非常之大，軍嘅單位就非常之多。

問：戰時陸軍總部嘅下便增加也野單位呀？

答：戰時陸軍總部嘅下便增加集團軍同軍團。

問：集團軍，軍團，同軍邊個至高，邊個至低呀？

答：集團軍，軍團，同軍，集團軍至高，其次係軍團，至低係軍。

問：戰時陸軍總部點解要有集團軍同軍團嘅單位呀？

答：為指揮系統方便起見，所以喺陸軍總部同軍嘅中間有集團軍同軍團。

第二課　陸軍編制

陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制唔同．因為戰時嘅編制比較平時嘅大好多，所以平時編制表嘅人員係要黎做戰時嘅幹部．陸軍最高嘅機關係陸軍總司令部．平時陸軍最大嘅單位係軍．軍嘅下便有師．師嘅下便有團，營，連等等．戰時因為、陸軍嘅編制非常之大，軍嘅單位就非常之多．為指揮系統方便同確實，所以喺陸軍總部同軍嘅中間有集團軍同軍團．

第三課　陸軍兵科同業科

問：陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有幾多種呀？

答：陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有十八種。

問：陸軍嘅兵科有邊幾種呀？

答：陸軍嘅兵科有八種，即係步兵，騎兵，砲兵，裝甲兵，工兵，通訊兵，輜重兵，同憲兵。

問：業科有邊幾種呀？

答：業科有十種，即係經理（軍需同財政），軍醫，獸醫，測量，兵工，軍樂，軍法，政工，軍用技術人員同軍用文職人員。

問：呢十八種兵科同業科可以分成邊兩類人員呀？

答：呢十八種兵科同業科可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員。

問：兵科人員係戰鬥人員抑或係非戰鬥人員呀？

答：兵科人員係戰鬥人員．

問：兵科人員負責乜野任務呀？

答：兵科人員負責戰鬥嘅任務．

問：業科人員係戰鬥人員抑或非戰鬥人員呀？

答：業科人員係非戰鬥人員．

問：業科人員喺前線工作抑或喺後方工作呀？

答：業科人員既然係非戰鬥人員，佢地多數喺後方工作，有時佢地亦都喺前線工作．

問：業科嘅政工人員負責邊種工作呀？

答：業科嘅政工人員係軍隊裏便嘅政治工作人員．佢地負責軍隊嘅政治工作，同對敵人嘅心理作戰、宣傳等等

問：如果係敢！有啲政工人員屬於戰鬥人員，係嗎？

答：係，有啲政工人員屬於戰鬥人員．

第三課　陸軍兵科同業科

陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有十八種．兵科有八種．佢地係步兵，騎兵，砲兵，裝甲兵，工兵，通信兵，輜重兵，同憲兵．業科有十種，佢地係經理，軍醫，獸醫，測量，兵工，軍樂，軍法，政工，軍用技術人員，同軍用文職人員．呢十八種兵業科嘅人員大概可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員兩類．兵科人員係戰鬥人員．業科人員係非戰鬥人員．政工係業科，但係有啲政工人員係戰鬥人員．

第四課　師司令部同指揮系統

問：一個師嘅最高長官係邊個呢？

答：一個師嘅最高長官係師長

問：一個師除咗師長之外重有乜野主要嘅長官呢？

答：一個師除咗師長之外重有兩個主要長官，即係副師長同參謀長.

問：司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，由邊個簽名？

答：司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，由師長簽名，但係副師長同參謀長亦都要簽名.

問：司令部嘅參謀分開幾多類呢？

答：司令部嘅參謀分開為一般參謀同特業參謀兩類.

問：一般參謀又叫做乜野呀？一般參謀有幾多個科呀？

答：一般參謀又叫做參謀處，呢個處裏便有四個科，即係第一科，第二科，第三科同第四科。

問：呢四個科嘅任務係乜野呀？

答：第一科負責人事，第二科負責情報，第三科負責教育同訓練，第四科負責軍需。

問：特業參謀負責乜野呀？佢嘅組織係點樣架？

答：特業參謀辦理其他各種事務，佢分為副官處，兵工處，軍醫處，軍法處，經理處等等。

問：參謀人員嘅主要職責係乜野？

答：參謀人員嘅主要職責係協助參謀長，所以佢地都係參謀長嘅助手。

問：參謀人員有冇權指揮部隊架？

答：參謀人員冇權指揮部隊，但係可以指導部隊。

第四課　師司令部同指揮系統

一個師除咗有一個師長之外，重有兩個長官．呢兩個長官係副師長同參謀長．司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，師長要簽名，副師長同參謀長亦都要簽名．司令部嘅參謀分開為一般參謀同特業參謀兩類．一般參謀又叫做參謀處，裏便有第一科，第二科，第三科，同第四科．特業參謀有副官處，兵工處，軍醫處，軍法處，經理處等等．所有嘅參謀人員都係參謀長嘅助手，有權指揮部隊，但係可以指導佢地．

第五課　步兵兵器同彈藥

問：步兵兵器可以分為邊兩種？

答：步兵兵器可以分為輕兵器同重兵器兩種

問：輕兵器係點樣架？

答：輕兵器係個人可以攜帶嘅兵器．

問：輕兵器包括乜野？

答：輕兵器包括手槍、馬槍、步槍、輕機關槍、刺刀、手榴彈同槍榴彈等等．

問：重兵器包括乜野？

答：重兵器包括重機關槍、火箭砲、無座力砲、迫擊砲、步兵榴彈砲同平射砲等等．

問：槍同砲有乜野唔同呢？

答：根據中國嘅兵器黎講，口徑唔過十公釐嘅係槍，口徑大過十公釐嘅係砲．

問：槍嘅彈藥叫做乜野？

答：槍嘅彈藥叫做子彈．

問：砲嘅彈藥叫乜野？

答：砲嘅彈藥叫做砲彈．

問：子彈分開幾多部分？

答：子彈分開三部分．

問：子彈嘅三部分叫做乜野？

答：第一部叫做彈頭，第二部叫做彈売同雷管，第三部叫做裝藥．

問：步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係乜野？

答：步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係定裝藥嘅砲彈．

問：榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係乜野？

答：榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係變裝藥嘅砲彈．

第五課　步兵兵器同彈藥

步兵兵器可以分為輕兵器同重兵器兩種．輕兵器係個人可以攜帶嘅兵器．輕兵器有手槍，馬槍，步槍，輕機關槍，刺刀，手榴彈，同槍榴彈等等．重兵器有重機關槍，火箭砲，無座力砲，迫擊砲，步兵榴彈砲同平射砲等等．槍嘅彈藥叫做子彈，砲嘅彈藥叫做砲彈．子彈分開三部分，即係彈頭，彈殼同雷管，裝藥．步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係定裝藥嘅砲彈；榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係變裝藥嘅砲彈．

第六課　砲兵火器同彈藥

問：根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以分為幾多類？

答：根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以分為三類．

問：砲兵第一類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第一類係彈道平射嘅火器，叫做加農砲．

問：砲兵第二類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第二類係彈道曲射嘅火器，叫做迫擊砲．

問：砲兵第三類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第三類係彈道喺平射同曲射中間嘅火器叫做榴彈砲．

問：砲兵嘅火器除阻呢三類之外重有乜野呢？

答：重有集束彈道嘅火器，叫做多管火箭砲．

問：根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以分為乜野？

答：根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以分為要塞砲，高射砲，步兵砲，同野戰砲等等．

問：根據口徑，野戰砲再可以分為幾多種？

答：根據口徑，野戰砲可以分為輕砲，重砲同最重砲三種．

問：最普通嘅砲兵彈藥係乜野？

答：最普通嘅砲兵彈藥係榴彈；其次係破甲彈同榴霰彈．

問：信管有幾多種？

答：信管有兩種，即係空炸信管，同碰炸信管．

問：碰炸信管又可以分為幾多種？

答：碰炸信管又可以分為瞬發，着發同延期三種．

第六課　砲兵火器同彈藥

根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以區分為三類。彈道平射嘅火器叫做加農砲；彈道曲射嘅火器叫做迫擊砲；彈道喺平射同曲射中間嘅火器叫做榴彈砲；重有集束彈道嘅火器叫做多管火箭砲。根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以區分為要塞砲，高射砲，步兵砲，同野戰砲等等。根據口徑，野戰砲再可以區分為，輕砲，重砲，同最重砲三種。最普通嘅砲兵彈藥係榴彈；其次係破甲彈同榴霰彈；信管有兩種，即係空炸信管同碰炸信管。碰炸信管又可以分為瞬發，着發同延期三種。

第七課　陸軍階級

問：陸軍嘅階級分開幾多類呢？

答：陸軍階級分開士兵同軍官兩類。

問：士兵嘅階級分開幾多級呢？

答：士兵嘅階級分開士兵同軍士兩級。

士兵、分開二等兵，一等兵，上等兵三級。

軍士分開下士，中士，上士三級。

問：軍官嘅階級分開幾多級呢？

答：軍官嘅階級分開尉官，校官，將官三級。

尉官分開准尉，少尉，中尉，上尉四級。

校官分開少校，中校，上校三級。

問：一個班係由邊個指揮？

答：一個班係由一個軍士指揮．

問：一個排係由邊個指揮？

答：一個排係由一個少尉或中尉指揮．

問：一個連級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個連級部隊係由一個上尉指揮．

問：一個營級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個營級部隊係由一個少校或中校指揮．

問：一個團級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個團級部隊係由一個上校指揮．

問：師以上部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：師以上部隊係由一個將官指揮．

第七課　陸軍階級

陸軍嘅階級分開軍官同士兵兩類，士兵嘅階級分開士兵同軍士兩級，士兵分開二等兵、一等兵、上等兵三級．軍士分開下士、中士、上士三級．軍官嘅階級分開尉官，校官同將官三級．尉官分開准尉、少尉，中尉，上尉四級；校官分開少校，中校，上校三級；將官分開少將、中將，二級上將，一級上將，特級上將五級．一個班係由一個軍士指揮，一個排係由個少尉或者中尉指揮，一個連級部隊係由上尉指揮、一個營級部隊係由少校或中校指揮，一個團級部隊係由上校指揮，師以上嘅部隊係由一個將官指揮．

第八課　擊退敵人嘅攻擊

問：普通嘅戰術分開幾多種呀？

答：普通嘅戰術分開攻擊同防禦兩種。

問：而家敵人計劃緊也野呀？

答：而家敵人計劃緊攻擊，佢地想由正面攻擊，派一個加強排攻擊我軍嘅陣地。

問：敵人攻擊嘅時候，我地點樣防禦我地嘅陣地呀？

答：敵人攻擊嘅時候，我地用地雷同鐵絲網等等嘅防禦工事防禦我地嘅陣地。

問：前晚我地埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好重之後，敵人點樣呀？

答：前晚我地埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好重，敵人繼續攻擊，而且剪斷我地嘅鐵絲網。

問：敵人繼續攻擊，同剪斷我地嘅鐵絲網，我地點樣防禦我地嘅陣地呀？

答：我地用機關槍，步槍，同砲兵嘅聯合火力擊退敵人．敵人傷亡好重，佢地嘅攻擊失敗咗．

問：敵人嘅攻擊失敗之後，我軍點樣呀？

答：敵人嘅攻擊失敗之後，我軍設立各部隊嘅統一前哨．

問：團嘅火力協調所負責乜野呀？

答：團嘅火力協調所負責指示射擊計劃．

問：呢個射擊計劃係點樣架？

答：呢個射擊計劃指示各種兵器射擊嘅時間同地點．

問：我地嘅營又設立一個點樣嘅陣地呀？

答：我地嘅營又設立一個全面防禦嘅陣地

第八課　擊退敵人攻擊

敵人想作正面攻擊，派一個加強排渡河攻擊我軍陣地。前晚我哋埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好多。但係敵人繼續攻擊，而且剪斷我地嘅鐵絲網，我地嘅機關槍，步槍，同砲兵嘅聯合火力擊退敵人，令敵人傷亡好重。佢地嘅攻擊失敗咗敵人攻擊失敗之後。我軍設立各部隊嘅統一前哨。團嘅火力協調所指示射擊計劃。呢個計劃指示各種兵器嘅射擊嘅時間，地點。我地嘅營又設立一個全面防禦嘅陣地。

第九課　搜索戰鬥(上)

問：斥候隊嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：斥候隊嘅主要任務係搜索敵軍嘅陣地，收集情報要點．偵察敵軍嘅調動，運輸，同補給等等．

問：而家我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候去邊處，佢地担任邊種、任務呀？

答：我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候渡河搜索敵軍陣地．收集情報要點．

問：連長喺指揮所對呢隊斥候下乜野命令呀？

答：連長喺指揮所對呢隊斥候下簡要命令，連長又用地圖嘅座標指示佢地點樣去佢地嘅目的地．

問：斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢就點樣呀？

答：斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢對部下下簡要命令，檢查部下嘅衣服同裝具；佢又指示斥候隊嘅集合地點，連絡符號，同目的地嘅磁針路線等等．

問：斥候隊幾時出發呀？

答：斥候隊喺第二日天光之前出發，因為喺天黑嘅時候出發，唔容易俾敵人睇見．

問：佢地出發嘅時候，佢地通過陣地前便嘅乜野呀？

答：佢地通過陣地前便嘅障碍物．

問：佢地利用乜野嘅遮蔽位置前進呀？

答：佢地利用遮蔽位置前進，好似樹木，凹地等等．佢地避免同敵人接觸．

第九課　搜索戰鬥(上)

我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候渡河搜索敵軍陣地，搵啲情報要點．連長喺指揮所對斥候隊長下簡要命令；佢用地圖嘅座標指示佢．呢個斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢對部下下簡要命令．佢檢查部下嘅衣服同裝具．佢又指示斥候隊嘅集合地點，連絡符號，目的地嘅磁針路線等等．第二日天光之前，斥候隊出發．佢地通過陣地前便嘅障碍物．佢地利用遮蔽位置，好似樹木呀，凹地呀等等前進．佢地一路避免同敵人接觸．

第十課　搜索戰鬥(下)

問：第二日天光嘅時候，我地嘅斥候隊到咗邊處呀？

答：第二日天光嘅時候，我地嘅斥候隊深入敵線嘅後便，到咗一個隱蔽位置處。

問：啲陣時佢地派出搜兵做乜野呀？

答：啲陣時佢地派出搜兵監視敵人接近同防止敵人嘅奇襲。

問：斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察乜野呀？

答：斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察敵人嘅陣地同敵人部隊嘅運動。

問：斥候隊長睇見啲乜野呀？

答：佢睇見一隊好長嘅護送隊，有戰車同各種車向前線前進。

問：斥候隊長又觀察倒敵人嘅乜野呀？

答：佢又觀察倒敵人嘅防禦工事。

問：敵人嘅防線處有啲乜野呀？

答：敵人嘅防線處有各種掩體同偽裝嘅兵器。

問：斥候隊長觀察倒嗰啲野之後，佢點樣記住佢地呀？

答：斥候隊長將嗰啲工事同兵器嘅位置標定喺地圖上便。

問：佢地完成任務之後，佢地就點呀？

答：佢地、完成任務之後，佢地就好小心敢翻去。

問：斥候隊長將嗰啲情報向邊處報告呀？

答：斥候隊長將嗰啲情報向師司令部報告。

問：師部得倒嗰啲情報之後，佢地點樣利用嗰啲情報呀？

答：師部根據嗰啲情報作敵情判斷。

第十課 搜索戰鬥(下)

第二日天光嘅時候，佢地深入敵線嘅後便．佢地喺一個隱蔽位置處．佢地派出搜兵監視敵人接近，防止奇襲．斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察敵人嘅陣地同部隊運動．佢睇見一隊好長嘅護送隊，有戰車同各種車向前線前進．佢又觀察倒敵人嘅防禦工事．防線處有各種掩體同偽裝嘅兵器．斥候隊長將嗰啲工事同兵器嘅位置標定喺地圖．佢地就好小心敢翻去．斥候隊嘅情報報告到咗師司令部：師部根據呢啲情報作敵情判斷．

第十一課　轟炸部隊集中

問：高級司令部得倒有關敵人嘅情報之後就點樣去做？

答：佢地將呢啲情報研究清楚之後，就作一個判斷，然後派出偵察機去嗰個區域觀察實在嘅情形．

問：偵察機喺嗰個區域睇倒乜野？

答：佢地睇倒一隊敵人嘅護送隊向前線前進．

問：佢地點樣通知師司令部？

答：佢地即刻用無線電通知師司令部．

問：師部通知乜野嘅部隊？

答：師部通知空軍部隊．

問：空軍派乜野飛機去轟炸同掃射敵人？

問：輕轟炸機由邊處起飛？

答：輕轟炸機由小型機場起飛．

問：輕轟炸機要幾耐然後到目標區域？

答：輕轟炸機喺幾分鐘之內到目標區域．

問：佢地見倒敵人就點樣？

答：佢地見倒敵人就掃射同轟炸敵人

問：好多敵人嘅也野被破壞咗？

答：好多敵人嘅坦克車被破壞咗．

問：有啲敵人嘅坦克車點樣？

答：有幾架敵人嘅坦克車設立一個防空陣地．

問：我地嘅飛機有冇被敵人打中？

答：有，有一架飛機被敵人打中其餘嘅飛機都安全飛返基地．

問：被打中嘅飛機嘅飛行員點樣？

答：飛行員見飛機燒着咗，就即刻跳傘，安全降落。

問：我軍又點樣封鎖呢個集中區域？

答：我軍又用阻止射擊封鎖呢個集中區域。

第十一課　轟炸部隊集中

高級司令部得倒情報，就派出偵察機去嗰個區域．佢地睇倒嗰隊護送隊向前線前進．佢地即刻用無線電通知師司令部．師部通知空軍派出戰鬥轟炸機去轟炸敵人．輕轟炸機由小型機場起飛．幾分鐘之內佢地到目標區域．佢地轟炸同掃射敵人．好多敵人嘅戰車被破壞．但係有幾架設立個防空陣地；有一架飛機被打中．飛行員跳傘，安全降落．我軍又用阻止射擊封鎖呢個集中區域．

第十二課　發動大規模攻擊(上)

問：傳令人員送乜野到本師師部？

答：傳令人員送一件極「機密」命令到本師師部．

問：呢件命令講乜野？

答：呢件命令叫本師轉移攻勢．

問：司令部接到命令之後，就點樣工作？

答：司令部嘅參謀人員接到命令之後，就根據命令計劃作戰，佢地非常之忙．

問：師長當時嘅工作點樣？

答：師長根據師嘅任務，敵軍同我軍兩方面嘅情形，地形，同其他有關嘅情報，作狀況判斷．

答：嗰晚未天光之前，我地嘅一個連接倒作戰命令

問：嗰個連由邊處向邊處前進？

答：嗰個連由連集合地向河邊嘅通過點前進。

問：佢地點樣渡河？

答：河處有浮橋船等佢地渡河。

問：嗰啲船由乜野部隊駕駛？

答：每隻船有兩個工兵，佢地駕駛浮橋船來回渡口處。

問：我地嘅步兵前進嘅時候，我地嘅砲兵點樣？

答：我地嘅步兵前進嘅時候，砲兵開始猛烈嘅彈幕射擊。

問：呢次彈幕射擊嘅主要目的係乜野？

答：呢次彈幕射擊嘅主要目的係掩護我軍前進，破壞敵軍嘅陣地，壓制敵軍嘅行動，同切斷敵人嘅補給線等等。

問：呢次砲擊嘅結果點樣？

答：呢次砲擊嘅結果，我軍得倒火力優勢。

第十二課　發動大規模攻擊(上)

傳令人員送「一件極機密」命令到本師，呢件命令叫本師轉移攻勢。司令部嘅參謀人員計劃作戰非常之忙。師長根據師嘅任務，敵我兩軍嘅情形，地形，同其他有關嘅情報作狀況判斷。喺晚未天光之前，我地嘅「個連接倒作戰命令，佢地由連集合地，向河邊通過點運動。河處有浮橋船等佢地。每隻船有兩個工兵，佢地駛隻船來回渡口處。我地嘅砲兵開始猛烈嘅彈幕射擊。我軍得倒火力優勢。

第十三課　發動大規模攻擊（下）

問：喺作戰嘅時候，我地點樣遮蔽我軍嘅行動？

答：喺作戰嘅時候，我地用煙幕遮蔽我軍嘅行動，尤其是渡河嘅地點更須要用煙幕黎遮蔽．

問：我軍嘅攻擊據點係用黎做乜野？

答：我軍嘅攻擊據點係用黎掩護我軍嘅攻擊．

問：我地嘅乜野部隊離開攻擊準備位置？

答：我地嘅步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置．

問：我地嘅步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置之後佢地就點樣呀？

答：佢地就開始渡河，而且渡河成功．

問：本師派乜野部隊去增援？

問：我地嘅一個連去到一個點樣嘅位置？

答：我地嘅一個連去到一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置。

問：嗰個連先用邊種射擊？

答：嗰個連先用衝鋒射擊。

問：佢地前進到邊處？

答：佢地向敵人衝鋒，前進到敵人嘅陣地，佢地能夠接近敵人，同殲滅敵人。

問：佢地點樣攻擊敵人嘅砲眼？

答：佢地用噴火器噴射敵人嘅砲眼。

問：呢次攻擊嘅結果點樣？

答：呢次攻擊好成功，敵人被迫投降，或者被殲滅。

問：敵人失敗咗之後，敵人又點樣？

答：敵人向我軍反攻，想趕我地嘅部隊翻過河。

問：敵人反攻嘅結果點樣呀？

答：結果敵人被我地擊退，敵人嘅守軍被我地俘虜。我軍擴張橋頭堡。

第十三課　發動大規模攻擊(下)

我軍用煙幕遮蔽行動同渡河地點．我地嘅攻擊據點掩護攻擊．步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置，開始渡河．佢地渡河成功．本師後續梯隊去增援．我地嘅一個連黎到一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置；用衝鋒射擊，佢地能夠接近敵人，同殲滅敵人．有啲地方，佢地用噴火器噴射敵人嘅砲眼；敵人被迫投降，或者被殲滅．敵人向我軍反攻，想趕佢地翻過河．但係反攻被擊退，守軍被俘虜．我軍擴張橋頭堡．

第十四課 全面大規模攻擊(上)

問：我軍幾時準備全面大規模攻擊？

答：我地嘅攻擊梯隊佔領橋頭之後，我地就準備全面大規模攻擊．

問：喺發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，我地嘅工兵負責邊種工作？

答：喺發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，我地嘅工兵已經架咗渡河嘅浮橋．

問：架咗浮橋之後，我地派邊種部隊渡河去增援攻擊梯隊？

答：我地派戰車同砲兵渡河去增援攻擊梯隊．

問：點解要將戰車同砲兵部隊配屬俾步兵部隊？

答：為直接支援起見，所以將佢地配屬俾步兵部隊．

答：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍設立潛聽哨，又派出斥候去搜索敵人，同防止佢地做工事或者加强工事．

問：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍準備乜野？

答：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍一方面警戒敵人嘅偷襲，一方面準備聽日朝頭早嘅攻擊．

問：朝頭早嘅時候，我軍派乜野部隊去攻擊？

答：朝頭早嘅時候，我軍派步兵同戰車部隊通過攻擊出發線，佢地開始攻擊．

問：我地嘅部隊點樣攻擊？

答：佢地用火力同運動去攻擊，即係用戰車嘅火力去掩護步兵嘅運動．

問：步兵佔領咗一個乜野嘅位置？

答：步兵佔領咗一個衝鋒準備位置.

問：佢地佔領咗衝鋒準備位置之後，就點樣呀？

答：佢地佔領咗衝鋒準備位置之後，就用衝鋒射擊同敵人作近身戰鬥.

第十四課 全面大規模攻擊(上)

發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，工兵已經架咗渡河嘅浮橋。架咗橋之後，戰車同砲兵趕快過河去增援攻擊梯隊。為直接支援起見，佢地都配屬俾步兵部隊。晚頭黑，我軍設立潛聽哨，又派出斥候去搜索敵人，同防止佢地做工事。朝早，步兵同戰車通過攻擊出發線。佢地開始攻擊。用火力同運動，步兵佔領一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置；用衝鋒射擊，佢地就可以同敵人近戰。

第十五課 全面大規模攻擊(下)

問：我地同敵人作近身戰鬥之後，最後敵人點樣？

答：最後，所有敵人陣地嘅抵抗巢都被消滅，或者被超越．

問：敵軍抵抗無效，佢地就點樣？

答：敵軍抵抗無效之後，敵軍撤退；我軍俘獲好多敵人．

問：敵人撤退之後，我軍點樣？

答：我軍向前追擊，深入敵人嘅領土．

問：我軍深入敵人領土嘅時候，我軍點解要咁小心？

答：我軍好小心，因為我地唔想令陣地突出．

問：我軍指揮所亦都點樣？

答：我軍指揮所亦都跟住我地嘅部隊向前推進．

問：敵人用乜野嚟去阻我軍嘅攻擊？

答：敵人用狙擊兵，戰車防禦砲，同化學戰等等辦法：牽制我軍嘅攻擊.

問：我軍點樣對付敵軍嘅化學兵器？

答：我軍中和敵軍嘅化學兵器.

問：我軍又破壞敵軍嘅乜野？

答：我軍又破壞佢地嘅戰車防禦砲.

問：敵人嘅乜野被我地睇見？

答：敵人嘅無後座力步槍同火箭砲嘅砲口焰被我軍睇見.

問：佢地嘅砲位被我軍嘅乜野破壞？

答：佢地嘅砲位被我軍步砲兵嘅火力破壞.

問：我軍攻擊嘅結果點樣？

答：我軍嘅攻擊好成功，變成突破.

第十五課 全面大規模攻擊(下)

最後，所有敵人陣地嘅抵抗巢都被消滅，或者被超越。我軍俘虜好多敵人。我軍深入敵人嘅領土。但係佢地好小心，佢地唔想令陣地突出。我軍指揮所向前推進。敵人用狙擊兵，戰車防禦砲同化學戰，想牽制我軍嘅攻擊。我軍中和敵軍嘅化學兵器，又破壞敵軍嘅戰車防禦砲。敵人嘅無後座力步槍同火箭砲嘅砲口焰被我軍睇見。佢地俾我軍步砲兵嘅火力破壞。攻擊成功，變成突破。

第十六課　戰俘訊問

問：我地俘虜咗敵人之後，我地點樣處理佢地呀？

答：我地將啲戰俘押翻去後方嘅司令部．

問：我地點解要訊問戰俘？

答：為得倒所要嘅重要情報起見，情報官係師嘅後方梯隊訊問戰俘．

問：未訊問戰俘之前，情報官應該做啲乜野？

答：未訊問戰俘之前，情報官先要搜查戰俘嘅全身，睇吓有冇文件．

問：對於啯啲文件，情報官應該點樣處理？

答：對於啯啲文件，情報官應該詳細審查．

問：情報官詳細審查咗啯啲文件之後，情報官應該點樣？

答：情報官根據文件，訊問俘虜有關嘅情報．

問：情報官訊問咗呢個俘虜之後，如果佢懷疑俘虜講大話，佢應該點樣？

答：情報官應該將俘虜嘅口供同第二處嘅情報比較一吓，睇吓佢嘅情報可靠唔可靠。

問：戰俘經過訊問之後，就被帶去邊處？

答：戰俘經過訊問之後，由衛兵帶佢翻去戰俘集中處。

問：如果呢個戰俘講嘅情報又正確，又有價值，就要點樣呢？

答：如果佢講嘅情報又正確又有價值，就要再問佢。

問：我地根據戰俘嘅情報黎做乜野？

答：我地根據戰俘嘅情報黎做敵情嘅判斷，可以預測敵人嘅作戰計劃。

問：最後我地將所有嘅戰俘都帶去邊處？

答：最後所有嘅戰俘都被衛兵帶去交通區嘅戰俘監禁所。

第十六課　戰俘訊問

為得倒所要嘅重要情報起見，情報官喺師嘅後方梯隊訊問戰俘．情報官先要搜查戰俘，然後審查戰俘嘅文件，又問佢同文件有關嘅情報．情報官訊問咗呢個俘虜．但係佢知道俘虜會講大話．所以佢用第二處嘅情報同佢嘅比較一吓，睇吓佢嘅情報可唔可靠．然後由衛兵帶戰俘翻去戰俘集中處．如果佢講嘅情報又正確又有價值，就要再問佢．最後所有嘅戰俘都被衛兵帶去交通區嘅戰俘監禁所．

第十七課 突破(上)

問：我地根據各方面嘅情報，對敵情下咗判斷之後，我地就點樣？

答：我地根據由各方面得到嘅情報，對敵情下咗判斷之後，決定攻擊嘅計劃。

問：我軍呢次對敵人作正面抑或側面攻擊？

答：我軍呢次對敵人作正面攻擊。

問：佢地點樣對敵人作正面嘅攻擊？

答：佢地集中火力，協同步兵同戰車對敵人作正面攻擊。

問：佢地突破咗敵人嘅邊條防線？

答：佢地突破咗敵人嘅主要抵抗線。

問：我地嘅步兵同裝甲部隊用乜野戰術？

答：我地嘅步兵同裝甲部隊用迂迴運動佢地兩翼包圍敵人。

問：敵人被我軍包圍之後，敵人就想點樣？

答：敵人被我軍包圍之後，就想脫離戰場，佢地趕快後退幾英哩．

問：敵人後退嘅時候，我軍用乜野部隊追擊敵人？

答：我軍用機械化部隊追擊敵人．

問：我地嘅追擊縱隊點樣追擊敵人？

答：我地嘅追擊縱隊一路破壞敵人嘅簡單工事．

問：有啲敵人點樣抵抗？

答：有啲敵人嘅抵抗巢頑強抵抗．

問：我軍又點樣去肅清敵人？

答：我軍又超越追擊敵人嘅主力，由特種部隊去肅清佢地．

問：追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位點樣同本隊通信？

答：追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位用無線電同本隊通信．

第十七課　突破(上)

我軍集中火力，協同步兵同戰車作正面攻擊．佢地突破敵人嘅主要抵抗線．步兵同裝甲部隊用迂迴運動．佢地兩翼包圍敵人．敵人想脫離戰場．佢地趕快後退幾英哩，但係我軍用機械化部隊追擊佢地．追擊縱隊一路破壞敵人嘅簡單工事．有啲敵人嘅抵抗巢頑強抵抗；我軍超越追擊敵人嘅主力，由特種部隊去肅清佢地．追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位用無線電同本隊通信．

第十八課 突破(下)

問：我軍點解暫時停止追擊？

答：因為我軍要補充燃料同彈藥，所以暫時停止追擊。

問：我軍補充燃料同彈藥嘅時候，點樣防止敵人奇襲？

答：我軍補充燃料同彈藥嘅時候，佢地設立機動防禦陣地，防止敵人奇襲。

問：我軍又派出飛機去轟炸敵人嘅邊處？

答：我軍又派出飛機去轟炸敵人嘅工業中心。

問：空襲嘅目的係乜野？

答：空襲嘅目的係打擊敵人嘅士氣。

問：有啲飛機掩護我地嘅乜野部隊？

答：有啲飛機掩護我地嘅追擊縱隊嘅側翼。

問：有啲飛機破壞敵人嘅屯野？

答：有啲飛機破壞敵人飛機場．

問：我地嘅飛機點解要破壞敵人嘅飛機場？

答：因為我地要防止敵人飛機起飛攻擊我軍嘅先頭部隊．

問：敵人後退嘅時候點樣？

答：敵人後退嘅時候，沿路遺棄好多裝備．

問：有啲地方敵人點樣阻住我軍前進？

答：有啲地方佢地設立道路障碍阻住我軍前進．

問：我軍點樣對付呢啲障碍物？

答：有啲障碍物俾我地嘅工兵破壞，有啲障碍物俾我地嘅砲兵破壞咗．

問：我地嘅先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛點樣？

答：我地嘅先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛都趕唔上．

第十八課 突破(下)

我軍補充燃料同彈葯，暫時停止追擊．補充既時候，佢地設立機動防禦陣地防止敵人奇襲．同時空軍轟炸敵人既工業中心．空襲可以打擊敵人既士氣．有啲飛機掩護追擊縱隊既側翼．有啲飛機破壞敵人既飛機場，防止敵人飛機攻擊我軍既先頭部隊．敵人沿後退既路遺棄好多裝備．有啲地方佢地設立道路障碍．呢啲障碍被我軍破壞．先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛都趕唔上．

第十九課　遠征軍

問：敵人喺邊處被我軍擊退？

答：敵人喺盟國領土被我軍擊退。

問：我地嘅一個師調去邊處？

答：我地嘅一個師調去後方。

問：佢地點解要調去後方呢？

答：因為佢地要補充人員同裝備，又要再訓練幾個月。

問：經過三個月嘅補充同訓練之後，而家呢個師點樣？

答：而家呢個師已經恢復充足嘅戰鬥力。

問：呢個師得到乜野嘅命令？

答：呢個師奉命去參加一支派遣軍。

問：呢支派遣軍有乜野實力？

答：呢支派遣軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦艇.

問：派遣軍幾時出發？

答：派遣軍晚頭黑出發.

問：佢地點解要實行燈火管制？

答：佢地實行燈火管制，避免敵人太早發現.

問：佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞到乜野？

答：佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞到浮雷沉咗.

問：我地點樣去救起生還嘅人？

答：我地用救生艇同直升機等等去救起生還嘅人.

問：我地嘅艦艇被敵人嘅乜野睇見？

答：我地嘅艦艇被敵人嘅潛水艇睇見.

問：敵人嘅潛水艇點樣對付我軍？

答：敵人嘅潛水艇用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦艇.

第十九課 遠征軍

敵人喺盟國領土被我軍擊退．我地嘅一個師調去後方．佢地補充人員同裝備，又再訓練幾個月．呢個師已經恢復充足嘅戰鬥力．師得倒命令去參加一支派遣軍．呢支軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦艇．派遣軍晚頭黑出發海上．佢地實行燈火管制，避免俾敵人太早發現．佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞浮雷沉咗；生還嘅人被救起．一隻敵人潛水艇睇見我軍；佢地用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦艇．

第二十課　灘頭登陸

問：敵人嘅潛水艇發射魚雷之後，有冇打中目標？

答：有，敵人嘅潛水艇發射魚雷之後，有打中目標

問：我軍發現敵人嘅乜野？

答：我軍發現敵人嘅潛水艇．

問：我軍發現咗敵人嘅潛水艇之後，就派乜野到呢個區域？

答：我軍發現咗敵人嘅潛水艇之後，就派驅逐艦趕到呢個區域．

問：我軍嘅驅逐艦點樣搜索同炸沉敵人嘅潛艇？

答：我軍嘅驅逐艦用蘇拿搜索敵人嘅潛艇，揼深水炸彈炸沉佢．

問：我地嘅派遣軍去到邊處？

答：我地嘅派遣軍去到登陸嘅目的地．

問：派遣軍去到目的地之後，我地嘅乜野部隊預備登陸？

答：我地嘅水陸兩棲部隊預備登陸。

問：派遣軍嘅司令官點樣指示各單位作戰？

答：派遣軍嘅司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰。

問：我軍用乜野掩護我地嘅部隊？

答：我軍用俯衝轟炸機同海軍砲掩護我地嘅部隊。

問：我地第一輪嘅登陸部隊用乜野運輸工具登陸？

答：我地第一輪嘅登陸部隊坐坦克登陸艇登陸。佢地登陸成功。

問：登陸之後，佢地建立乜野陣地？

答：登陸之後，佢地建立灘頭陣地，由登陸指揮官指揮。佢地開始擴大灘頭陣地。

問：推進嘅時候，佢地點樣搜索地雷？

答：推進嘅時候，佢地用地雷搜索器搜索地雷。

第二十課　灘頭登陸

敵人嘅魚雷有打中目標；潛水艇被我軍發現．我軍嘅驅逐艦趕到呢個區域．驅逐艦用蘇拿搜索潛艇，掾深水炸彈炸沉佢．派遣軍去到目的地．水陸兩棲部隊預備登陸．派遣軍嘅司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰．喺俯衝轟炸機同海軍砲掩護下，第一輪登陸部隊坐坦克登陸艇登陸．佢地登陸成功．佢地建立灘頭陣地，由登陸指揮官指揮．佢地開始擴大灘頭陣地．推進嘅時候，佢地用地雷搜索器搜索地雷．

第二十一課　降落傘部隊喺敵人後方降落

問：我軍登陸之後，繼續向邊處進攻？

答：我軍登陸之後，繼續向敵人嘅海岸嘅一個要點進攻．

問：我軍進攻嘅目的係乜野？

答：我軍進攻嘅目的係想佔領港口附近嘅一個城市

問：我地點解要佔領呢個城市？

答：因為呢個城市係交通嘅樞紐同戰畧上嘅重鎮．

問：敵人喺呢個城市有冇永久防禦工事？

答：有，敵人喺呢個城市有永久防禦工事．

問：我軍採用乜野戰術去攻破呢個城？

答：我軍用大迂迴戰術去攻擊敵人嘅後方，一方面分散敵人嘅兵力，另一方面前後夾攻敵人．

問：我地點樣迂迴到敵人嘅後方？

答：我地派出降落傘部隊，用運輸機喺敵人嘅後方降落。

問：喺敢樣嘅形勢之下，敵人點樣？

答：喺敢樣嘅形勢之下，敵人要兩面作戰，前後受襲。

問：我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就點樣？

答：我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就立即改編，成為有組織嘅部隊。

問：降落傘部隊攜帶乜野嘅武器，有乜野裝備？

答：降落傘部隊攜帶輕便嘅武器，同簡單嘅裝備，佢地用指南針黎認識方向，用步行機同各部隊聯絡，佢地又用直升飛機運送傷兵。

問：降落傘部隊降落之後攻擊乜野地方？

答：降落傘部隊攻擊個個城市嘅主要交通中心，同十字路口，佢地同時擴大空降地區（空頭堡）。

第二十一課　降落傘部隊

降落傘部隊喺敵人後方降落

我軍嘅部隊登陸之後，繼續向敵人嘅海岸嘅一個要點攻擊，想佔領港口附近嘅一個城市，但係敵人頑强抵抗．我軍想分散敵人嘅兵力，同前後夾攻敵人，我軍就派出降落傘部隊坐運輸機，喺敵人城市嘅後方降落，敢樣做，我地迫敵人兩面作戰，前後受襲．我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就立即改編成為有組織嘅部隊，向敵人嘅主要交通中心同十字路口攻擊．佢地又擴大空降地區(空頭堡)．

第二十二課　破獲敵人嘅間諜網

問：間諜係乜野？

答：間諜係敵人喺我地嘅前方或後方做秘密嘅地下工作嘅情報人員．

問：我地逮捕咗敵人嘅間諜之後，我地就要點樣？

答：我地逮捕咗敵人嘅間諜之後，我地可以將間諜交俾軍事法庭，由軍事法庭審判；如果我地揾倒證據，可以將佢判有期徒刑，無期徒刑或者死刑．

問：喺戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人喺我軍佔領嘅地帶有乜野行動？

答：戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人嘅間諜喺我軍佔領嘅地帶好活動，喺嗰處組織咗一個間諜網．

問：敵人嘅間諜有乜野嘅企圖？

答：敵人嘅間諜企圖獲得我軍作戰計劃嘅情報，同各種有關嘅情報．

問：有一個敵人嘅間諜點樣？

答：有一個敵人嘅間諜化裝做一個戰地隨軍記者，

問：嗰個間諜嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：嗰個間諜嘅主要任務係混入我軍嘅師司令部，用影相機偷影我地嘅秘密文件．

問：佢得倒呢啲情報之後，點樣將佢轉到敵人嘅司令部？

答：佢得倒呢啲情報之後，佢就由秘密無線電台，將呢啲情報廣播到敵軍司令部嘅情報處．

問：嗰個間諜嘅活動有冇引起我軍嘅反間人員嘅懷疑？

答：有，嗰個間諜嘅活動引起我軍嘅反間人員嘅懷疑．我地即刻將嗰個間諜逮捕；經過我軍嘅軍事法庭審判之後，佢被判死刑，就由行刑隊將佢槍決．

第二十二課　破獲敵人嘅間諜網

喺戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人嘅間諜喺我軍佔領嘅地帶好活動。佢地企圖獲得我軍嘅作戰計劃同各種有關嘅情報。有一個間諜化裝做一個戰地隨軍記者，混入我軍嘅師司令部，用影相機偷影秘密文件；然後由佢地嘅秘密無線電台，將文件嘅內容、廣播到敵軍嘅情報處。但係佢地嘅活動引起我軍反間人員嘅懷疑，我地即刻將嗰個間諜逮捕。根據嗰個間諜嘅口供，我地破獲敵人嘅間諜機關；經過我軍嘅軍事法庭審判之後，就將佢判死刑。

第二十三課　敵人游擊隊滲入我軍嘅後方

問：游擊隊係乜野？

答：游擊隊係一個細嘅部隊；佢地混入敵人嘅後方，担任破壞嘅工作；佢地着便衣，攜帶輕便嘅武器．

問：游擊隊點樣打仗？

答：游擊隊多數喺夜晚打仗．佢地用化整為零嘅戰術，佢地邊處都去，冇一定嘅陣地．

問：游擊隊嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：佢地嘅主要任務係擾亂敵人嘅後方，破壞敵人嘅軍事設備，同重要嘅交通線．

問：我軍佔領咗敵人海岸嘅幾個重要城市之後，我地又點樣？

答：我地嘅軍隊繼續前進，深入敵人嘅內地，佔領一個好緊要嘅城市．

問：敵人由啲個城市撤退之後，佢地點樣？

答：敵人由啲個城市撤退之後，佢地留好多游擊隊喺啲個城市處．

問：啲個城市外便嘅敵人游擊隊點樣滲入我軍嘅後方？

答：敵人嘅游擊隊化裝做難民；佢地通過我地嘅檢查站滲入我軍嘅後方．

問：佢地點樣襲擊我地嘅運輸隊？

答：喺晚頭黑，佢地埋伏喺險要嘅山路旁邊．我地嘅運輸隊經過山谷嘅時候，佢地就揸出手槍，馬槍，手榴彈同炸藥等等輕便嘅武器去襲擊我地．我軍中伏，傷亡好重．

問：佢地又破壞乜野？

答：佢地炸毀我軍嘅運輸線，好似鐵路，橋樑等等之後，又破壞我地嘅倉庫，彈藥庫，補給站，等等．

第二十三課　敵人嘅游擊隊滲入我軍嘅後方

我軍佔領咗敵人海岸嘅幾個要點之後，繼續前進，深入敵人嘅內地．佔領一個好緊要嘅城市．敵人後退嘅時候，佢地留好多游擊隊喺呢個城市；又派出好多游擊隊，化裝做難民，通過我地嘅檢查站，滲入呢個城市嘅後方．喺呢處，佢地化整為零．喺晚頭黑嘅時候，佢地埋伏喺險要嘅山路旁邊；佢地等我地嘅運輸隊經過山谷嘅時候，就擰出手槍，馬槍，手榴彈同炸藥等等嘅武器去襲擊我地嘅運輸隊，炸毀我軍嘅運輸線，好似鐵路，橋樑等等．喺呢個城市嘅裏便，佢地破壞我地嘅倉庫，同軍事設備，等等．

第二十四課　利用心理戰令敵人投降

問：喺現代嘅戰爭，關於決勝負嘅條件，除咗武器之外，重有乜野？

答：喺現代嘅戰爭，關於決勝負嘅條件，除咗武器之外，重有心理作戰。

問：心理戰係乜野？佢有乜野好處？

答：用心理去戰敗敵人，呢種辦法叫做心理戰。心理戰嘅好處係用最低嘅代價得到最大嘅收穫。我地可以用心理戰去令敵人離心，厭戰，反戰，或者引起敵人嘅兵變，逃亡，等等。

問：心理戰包括啲乜野？

答：心理戰包括散傳單，敵前喊話，敵後廣播，等等。

問：我軍呢次點解要用心理戰？

答：敵人嘅首都已經被我軍包圍，但係敵人死守待援。如果我軍繼續攻擊，雙方傷亡一定好重，為減少傷亡起見，我軍用心理戰。

問：我軍呢次點樣進行心理戰？

答：我地派飛機去敵人嘅前線散傳單，話我軍已經將佢地嘅首都四面包圍，所有嘅補給線都已經斷絕，彈藥同糧食差唔多用完，好多高級嘅指揮官都走咗。如果佢地繼續抵抗，即係自殺；如果佢地自動投降，戰事停止以後，我地就遣送佢地回國。

問：呢次散傳單嘅效果點樣？

答：敵人彈盡援絕，士氣低落。佢地睇見傳單之後個個都想逃亡同投降。所以敵人嘅逃兵一日比一日多。

問：佢地點樣向我軍投降？

答：佢地多數喺晚頭黑嘅時候逃亡；佢地一手擰住白旗，一手擰住傳單走到我軍嘅陣地處。

問：我軍將逃兵送去邊處？

答：我軍將逃兵送到後方。

第二十四課　利用心理戰令敵人投降

用心理嘅辦法去戰敗敵人；呢種辦法叫做心理戰．我地可以用心理戰去令敵人離心，厭戰，同反戰，或者引起敵人嘅兵變，逃亡，等等．敵人嘅首都已經被我軍包圍，但係敵人死守待援．為減少我軍嘅傷亡起見，我軍就用心理戰；我軍派飛機去敵人嘅前線散傳單，叫敵人停止抵抗．敵人彈盡援絕，佢地嘅士氣低落；投降同逃亡嘅人數一日比一日增加．佢地投降嘅時候，一手擰白旗，一手揸住傳單，走到我軍嘅陣地．

第二十五課　向敵人首都作最後總攻擊

問：敵人首都郊外嘅重要據點完全被我軍佔領之後，敵人嘅主力部隊退到邊處？

答：敵人首都郊外嘅重要據點完全被我軍佔領之後，敵人嘅主力部隊退到首都嘅裏便.

問：敵人守軍司令嘅作戰計劃點樣？

答：敵人守軍司令打算死守；如果守唔住、就突圍.

問：我軍嘅攻城部隊打算點樣？最後點樣？

答：我軍嘅指揮官向敵人守軍司令下最後通牒、限佢地喺二十四小時之內投降.如果敵人唔接受，我地就開始總攻擊.二十四小時之後敵軍拒絕接受我地嘅最後通牒.我軍開始總攻擊.我地嘅大砲向城內猛烈轟擊.

問：首都裏便嘅情形點樣？

答：敵軍司令下令戒嚴．城內到處放步哨；喺各大建築物嘅前便放好多沙包；重要嘅十字路口有地雷區同陷穽．但係敵人嘅糧食同彈藥唔夠．市內秩序混亂．

問：我軍嘅總攻擊開始之後，雙方嘅情形點樣？

答：經過幾小時嘅戰鬥之後，我軍嘅坦克車掩護先頭部隊入城．首都發生巷戰．敵人喺大建築物嘅窗口同屋頂處用輕兵器向我軍射擊；佢地嘅步兵向我軍坦克車嘅死角衝鋒．我軍嘅幾架坦克車撞到地雷．雙方嘅死傷都好重．

第二十五課　向敵人首都作最後總攻擊

敵人首都郊外所有嘅據點完全被我軍佔領．敵人嘅主力部隊退到首都嘅裏便，準備巷戰．首都而家戒嚴；到處都有沙包，地雷區，同陷穽．但係佢地嘅糧食同彈藥唔夠，市內秩序混亂．我軍指揮官向敵人守軍下最後通牒，限佢地二十四小時之內投降，但係敵人拒絕接受我地嘅最後通牒．我軍開始向城內炮擊；經過幾小時嘅戰鬥之後，我軍嘅先頭部隊攻入市區，首都發生巷戰．敵人喺大建築物嘅屋頂同窗口用輕兵器向我軍射擊；佢地嘅步兵向我軍坦克車嘅死角衝鋒；我軍嘅幾架坦克車撞到地雷．雙方死傷好重．

第二十六課　慶祝勝利日

問：敵人嘅首都現在嘅情勢點樣？

答：敵人嘅首都被我軍四面包圍．戰鬥已經到咗最後階段．情勢好嚴重，市民都鎖住門，唔敢出街．

問：敵人冇法子再抵抗嘅時候，只有點樣？

答：敵人冇法子再抵抗嘅時候，只有無條件投降．佢地派代表向我軍提出休戰嘅請求．

問：停戰之後，我軍點樣維持市內嘅治安？

答：我軍下戒嚴嘅命令，派出憲兵檢查平民．我地嘅部隊解除敵人嘅武裝，恢復市內嘅秩序．

問：我地戰勝之後，我地嘅佔領軍有乜野舉動？

答：我地嘅海,陸,空三軍舉行大巡行,開入敵人嘅首都．敵國首都嘅人民歡迎我軍．

問：我地各地方嘅軍隊點樣？

答：我地各地嘅佔領軍解除當地敵人嘅武裝，慶祝最後嘅勝利．

問：我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士點樣？

答：我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士頒發勳章或者升級

問：我地嘅政府對受傷嘅軍人點樣？

答：我地嘅政府對受傷嘅軍人慰勞，對傷亡軍人嘅家屬撫恤．

問：全國人民對陣亡將士點樣？

答：全國人民對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮，全國軍民都狂歡，慶祝勝利日．

第二十六課　慶祝勝利日

敵人嘅首都被我軍四面包圍，敵人冇法子再抵抗．佢地只有無條件投降．佢地派代表向我軍提出休戰嘅請求．我地嘅海、陸，空三軍舉行大巡行，闖入敵人嘅首都．敵國嘅人民歡迎我軍入城．我軍喺各地解除敵人嘅武裝．我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士頒發勳章．或者升級；對受傷嘅軍人慰勞；對陣亡嘅將士舉行公祭典禮．全國軍民都狂歡，慶祝勝利日．